V/f & Sensorless Vector AC Drive

0.4 to 11 kW

230 Vac 1ph, 230-460 Vac 3ph

SIEIDrive

ADV50

English

.... User manual

GEFRAN

GEFRAN Drive & Motion Control Unit			
Technology *Controllo*	V/f control	V/f & Sensorless Vector	Vector Field Oriented *Vettoriale Orientam. di Flusso*
Model *Modello*	ADV20	ADV50	ADV200

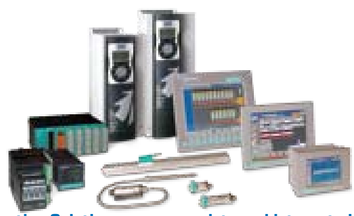
Specifications - *Specifiche*			
Power *Potenza*	0.5 ... 5 Hp 0,4... 3,7 kW	0.5 ... 15 Hp 0,4... 11 kW	1 ... 60 Hp 0,75... 45 kW
Voltage *Tensione*	100...120 Vac, 1ph 200...240 Vac, 1ph 380...480 Vac, 3ph	200...240 Vac, 1ph 200...240 Vac, 3ph 380...480 Vac, 3ph	400 ... 480 Vac, 3ph
Speed regulation (accuracy) *Regolazione di velocità (precisione)*	0,5%	0,5%, 0,02% with dig. encoder 0,5%, 0,02% con encoder dig.	± 0,01% Rated motor speed (4)
Analog inputs *Ingressi analogici*	1 voltage or current 1 in tensione o corrente	2 (1 current; 1 voltage) 2 (1 corrente, 1 in tens.)	2 bipolar (current; voltage) 2 bipolari (corrente, in tens.)
Analog outputs *Uscite analogiche*	1 (voltage) 1 (tensione)	1 (voltage) 1 (tensione)	2 (1 voltage or current; 1 voltage) 2 (1 in tens. o corrente, 1 in tens.)
Digital inputs *Ingressi digitali*	6	6	6
Digital outputs *Uscite digitali*	1 (relay) 1 (relè)	2 (1 static and 1 relay) 2 (1 statica e 1 a relè)	4 (2 static and 2 relays) 4 (2 statiche e 2 a relè)
Communications Comunicazioni seriali	RS-485 (RJ-45) with Modbus protocol (3). Optional: DeviceNet, Profibus, LonWorks, CANopen	RS-485 (RJ-45) with Modbus protocol (3). Optional: DeviceNet, Profibus, LonWorks, CANopen	RS485, (3) Modbus RTU, DeviceNet, Profibus DP, CANopen, GDNet

1) w/ sin encoder, 0,2% w/ DE
1) Con encoder sinusoidale. Con encoder digitale 0,2%.

2) w/ sin encoder, 1000:1 w/ DE
2) Con encoder sinusoidale, con encoder digitale 1000:1

3) RS485 port is used for programming (PC) and control (Modbus communication standard in all the drive series)
3) La porta seriale RS485 è utilizzata per la programmazione (PC) e controllo (comunicazione Modbus standard in tutti i drive)

4) Referred to standard 4 poles motor
4) Riferito a motori standard 4 poli



Automation Solutions more complete and integrated.

			
Torque Vector *Vettoriale di coppia*	Flux Vector *Vettoriale di flusso*	Servo	Digital DC *Convertitori Digitali*
AGy-EV	AVy	XVy-EV	TPD32

Specifications - *Specifiche*			
1 ... 250 Hp 0,75 ... 200 kW	1 ... 700 Hp 0,75 ... 630 kW	2 ... 450 Hp 1,5 ... 315 kW	20 A ... 4800 A
230 ... 575 Vac, 3ph	230 ... 690 Vac, 3ph	230 ... 480 Vac, 3ph	230 ... 690 Vac, 3ph
0,5 ... 1%	0,01% (1)	absolute	0,01% (1)
3 (±10V), differential 3 (±10V), differenziali	33 (±10V), differential 3 (±10V), differenziali	2 (±10V), differential 2 (±10V), differenziali	3 (±10V), differential 3 (±10V), differenziali
3 (±10V)	2 (±10V)	2 (±10V)	2 (±10V)
8	8	8	8
4 (2 static and 2 relays) 4 (2 statiche e 2 a relè)	4 (2 static and 2 relays) 4 (2 statiche e 2 a relè)	7 (6 static and 1 relays) 7 (6 statiche e 1 a relè)	6 (4 static and 2 relays) 6 (4 statiche e 2 a relè)
RS485, (3) Modbus RTU, DeviceNet, Profibus DP, CANopen	RS485, (3) Modbus RTU, DeviceNet, Profibus DP, CANopen	RS485, (3) Modbus RTU, DeviceNet, Profibus DP, CANopen, FastLink, GDNet	RS485, (3) Modbus RTU, DeviceNet, Profibus DP, CANopen, Interbus S

GEFRAN S.p.A.

Headquarters
Via Sebina 74
25050 Provaglio d'Iseo (BS) - ITALY
Ph. +39 030 98881
Fax +39 030 9839063
info@gefran.com
www.gefran.com

Drive & Motion Control Unit
Via Carducci 24
21040 Gerenzano [VA] - ITALY
Ph. +39 02 967601
Fax +39 02 9682653
infomotion@gefran.com

Technical Assistance
technohelp@gefran.com

Customer Service
motioncustomer@gefran.com
Ph. +39 02 96760500
Fax +39 02 96760278

GEFRAN Drive & Motion Control Unit			
Technology *Controllo*	V/f control	V/f & Sensorless Vector	Vector Field Oriented *Vettoriale Orientam. di Flusso*
Model *Modello*	ADV20	ADV50	ADV200
Applications - *Applicazioni*			
Centrifugal Pumps & Fans *Pompe Centrifughe e Ventilatori*	●	●	●
Conveyors *Trasportatori*	●	●	●
Converting, Extruders, Winders *Converting, Estrusori, Avvolgitori*	●	●	●
Material Handling	●	●	●
Machine Tools *Macchine Utensili*	●	●	●
Packaging, Positioning *Imballaggio, Posizionamento*	●	●	●
Tests Stands *Macchine di test*	●	●	●
Embedded PLC Controllers *Controllo PLC integrato*		●	●
Wire & Cable, Wire Draw *Macchine lavorazione filo*	●	●	●
Tube Mills, Rolling Mills *Macchine lavorazione tubi metallo*	●	●	●
Punch Presses *Presse*			●
Glass *Vetro*			●
Paper *Carta*	●	●	●

			
Torque Vector *Vettoriale di coppia*	Flux Vector *Vettoriale di flusso*	Servo	Digital DC *Convertitori Digitali*
AGy-EV	AVy	XVy-EV	TPD32

Applications - *Applicazioni*

●			
●	●	●	●
●	●	●	●
●	●	●	●
●	●	●	●
●	●	●	
●	●	●	●
	●	●	
●	●	●	●
●	●	●	●
●		●	
●	●	●	●
●	●	●	●

This page intentionally left blank.

Preface

Thank you for choosing GEFRAN's high-performance ADV50 Series. The ADV50 Series is manufactured with high-quality components and materials and incorporate the latest microprocessor technology available.

This manual is to be used for the installation, parameter setting, troubleshooting, and daily maintenance of the AC motor drive. To guarantee safe operation of the equipment, read the following safety guidelines before connecting power to the AC motor drive. Keep this operating manual at hand and distribute to all users for reference.

To ensure the safety of operators and equipment, only qualified personnel familiar with AC motor drive are to do installation, start-up and maintenance. Always read this manual thoroughly before using ADV50 series AC Motor Drive, especially the WARNING, DANGER and CAUTION notes. Failure to comply may result in personal injury and equipment damage. If you have any questions, please contact your dealer.

PLEASE READ PRIOR TO INSTALLATION FOR SAFETY.

DANGER!

1. AC input power must be disconnected before any wiring to the AC motor drive is made.
2. A charge may still remain in the DC-link capacitors with hazardous voltages, even if the power has been turned off. To prevent personal injury, please ensure that power has turned off before opening the AC motor drive and wait ten minutes for the capacitors to discharge to safe voltage levels.
3. Never reassemble internal components or wiring.
4. The AC motor drive may be destroyed beyond repair if incorrect cables are connected to the input/output terminals. Never connect the AC motor drive output terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3 directly to the AC mains circuit power supply.
5. Ground the ADV50 using the ground terminal. The grounding method must comply with the laws of the country where the AC motor drive is to be installed. Refer to the Basic Wiring Diagram.
6. ADV50 series is used only to control variable speed of 3-phase induction motors, NOT for 1-phase motors or other purpose.
7. ADV50 series shall NOT be used for life support equipment or any life safety situation.

WARNING!

1. DO NOT use Hi-pot test for internal components. The semi-conductor used in AC motor drive easily damage by high-voltage.
2. There are highly sensitive MOS components on the printed circuit boards. These components are especially sensitive to static electricity. To prevent damage to these components, do not touch these components or the circuit boards with metal objects or your bare hands.
3. Only qualified persons are allowed to install, wire and maintain AC motor drives.

CAUTION!

1. Some parameters settings can cause the motor to run immediately after applying power.
2. DO NOT install the AC motor drive in a place subjected to high temperature, direct sunlight, high humidity, excessive vibration, corrosive gases or liquids, or airborne dust or metallic particles.
3. Only use AC motor drives within specification. Failure to comply may result in fire, explosion or electric shock.
4. To prevent personal injury, please keep children and unqualified people away from the equipment.
5. When the motor cable between AC motor drive and motor is too long, the layer insulation of the motor may be damaged. Please use a frequency inverter duty motor or add an AC output reactor to prevent damage to the motor. Refer to appendix B Reactor for details.
6. The rated voltage for AC motor drive must be ≤ 240V (≤ 480V for 460V models) and the mains supply current capacity must be ≤ 5000A RMS.

Table of Contents

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 1 Introduction

The AC motor drive should be kept in the shipping carton or crate before installation. In order to retain the warranty coverage, the AC motor drive should be stored properly when it is not to be used for an extended period of time. Storage conditions are:

CAUTION!

1. Store in a clean and dry location free from direct sunlight or corrosive fumes.
2. Store within an ambient temperature range of -20 °C to +60 °C.
3. Store within a relative humidity range of 0% to 90% and non-condensing environment.
4. Store within an air pressure range of 86 kPA to 106kPA.
5. DO NOT place on the ground directly. It should be stored properly. Moreover, if the surrounding environment is humid, you should put desicant dryer packet(s) in the package.
6. DO NOT store in an area with rapid changes in temperature. It may cause condensation and frost.
7. If the AC motor drive is stored for more than 3 months, the temperature should not be higher than 30 °C. Storage longer than one year is not recommended, it could result in the degradation of the electrolytic capacitors.
8. When the AC motor drive is not used for longer time after installation on building sites or places with humidity and dust, it's best to move the AC motor drive to an environment as stated above.

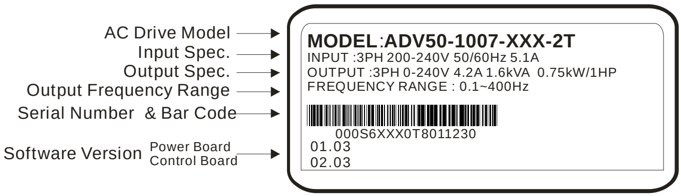
1.1 Receiving and Inspection

This ADV50 AC motor drive has gone through rigorous quality control tests at the factory before shipment. After receiving the AC motor drive, please check for the following:

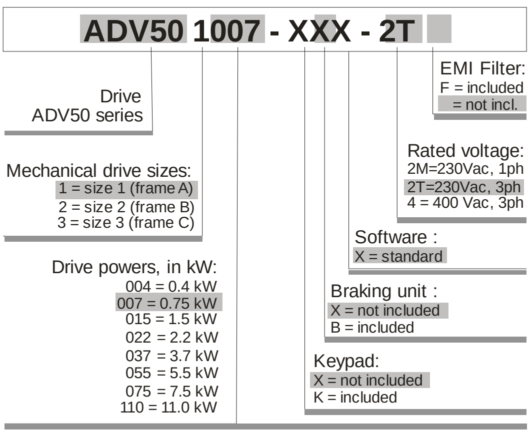
- Check to make sure that the package includes an AC motor drive, the Quick Start manual and CD.
- Inspect the unit to assure it was not damaged during shipment.
- Make sure that the part number indicated on the nameplate corresponds with the part number of your order.

1.1.1 Nameplate Information

Example for 1HP/0.75kW 3-phase 230V AC motor drive



1.1.2 Model Explanation



1.1.3 Series Number Explanation

000S6D25 0T 8 01 1230

- **1230** — **Production number**
- **01** — **Production week**
- **8** — **Production year 2008**
- **0T** — **Production factory**
  T: Taiwan, W: China
- **000S6D25** — **Model**: **230V 3-phase 1HP(0.75kW)**

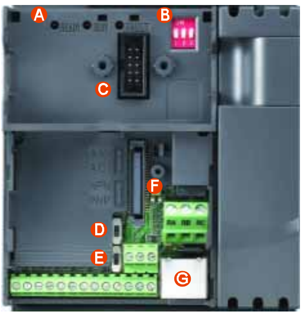
> If the nameplate information does not correspond to your purchase order or if there are any problems, please contact your distributor.

1.1.4 Drive Frames and Appearances

0.5-2HP/0.4-1.5kW (Frame A)

1-15HP/0.75-11kW (Frame B&C)

Internal Structure



A READY = power indicator
RUN = status indicator
FAULT = fault indicator

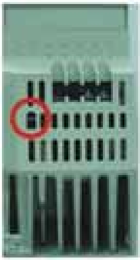
B 1. Switch to ON for 50Hz, refer to P.01.00 to P.01.02 for details
2. Switch to ON for free run to stop refer to P.02.02
3. Switch to ON for setting frequency source to ACI (P.02.02=2)

C Keypad mounting port
D ACI terminal /ACI/AVI 2 switch)
E NPN/PNP
F Mounting port for extension card
G RS 485 port (RJ-45)

NOTE

The LED “READY” will light up after applying power. The light won’t be off until the capacitors are discharged to safe voltage levels after power off.

RFI Jumper Location

Frame A: near the output terminals (U/T1, V/T2, W/T3)	**Frame B:** above the nameplate	**Frame C:** above the warning label
		

Frame	Power range	Models
A	0.5-2hp (0.4-1.5kW)	ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF/-4F, ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-1015-XXX-2T/4F
B	1-5hp (0.75-3.7kW)	ADV50-2015-XXX-2MF, ADV50-2022-XXX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-2037-XXX-2T/4F
C	7.5-15hp (5.5-11kW)	ADV50-3055-XXX-2T/4F, ADV50-3075-XXX-2T/4F, ADV50-3110-XXX-4F

RFI Jumper

RFI Jumper: The AC motor drive may emit the electrical noise. The RFI jumper is used to suppress the interference (Radio Frequency Interference) on the power line.

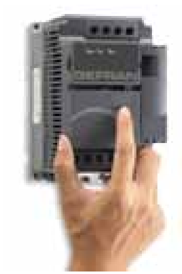
Main power isolated from earth:

If the AC motor drive is supplied from an isolated power (IT power), **the RFI jumper must be cut off**. Then the RFI capacities (filter capacitors) will be disconnected from ground to prevent circuit damage (according to IEC 61800-3) and reduce earth leakage current.

CAUTION!

1. After applying power to the AC motor drive, do not cut off the RFI jumper. Therefore, please make sure that main power has been switched off before cutting the RFI jumper.
2. The gap discharge may occur when the transient voltage is higher than 1,000V. Besides, electro-magnetic compatibility of the AC motor drives will be lower after cutting the RFI jumper.
3. Do NOT cut the RFI jumper when main power is connected to earth.
4. The RFI jumper cannot be cut when Hi-pot tests are performed. The mains power and motor must be separated if high voltage test is performed and the leakage currents are too high.
5. To prevent drive damage, the RFI jumper connected to ground shall be cut off if the AC motor drive is installed on an ungrounded power system or a high resistance-grounded (over 30 ohms) power system or a corner grounded TN system.

1.1.5 Remove Instructions

<table>
<tr><th>Remove Keypad</th><th>Remove Front Cover</th></tr>
<tr><td>1. Press and hold in the tabs on each side of the cover.
2. Pull the cover up to release.
</td><td>
Step 1

Step 2</td></tr>
</table>

Remove RST Terminal Cover

(For Frame B and Frame C)

For frame A, it doesn't have cover and can be wired directly.

Remove UVW Terminal Cover

(For Frame B and Frame C)

For frame A, it doesn't have cover and can be wired directly.

Remove Fan

Remove Extension Card

1.2 Preparation for Installation and Wiring

1.2.1 Ambient Conditions

Install the AC motor drive in an environment with the following conditions:

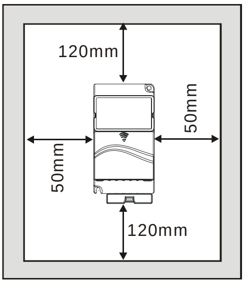
Operation	Air Temperature:	-10 ~ +50°C (14 ~ 122°F) for UL & cUL -10 ~ +40°C (14 ~ 104°F) for side-by-side mounting
	Relative Humidity:	<90%, no condensation allowed
	Atmosphere pressure:	86 ~ 106 kPa
	Installation Site Altitude:	<1000m
	Vibration:	<20Hz: 9.80 m/s^2 (1G) max 20 ~ 50Hz: 5.88 m/s^2 (0.6G) max

Storage Transportation	Temperature:	-20°C ~ +60°C (-4°F ~ 140°F)
	Relative Humidity:	<90%, no condensation allowed
	Atmosphere pressure:	86 ~ 106 kPa
	Vibration:	<20Hz: 9.80 m/s^2 (1G) max 20 ~ 50Hz: 5.88 m/s^2 (0.6G) max
Pollution Degree	2: good for a factory type environment.	

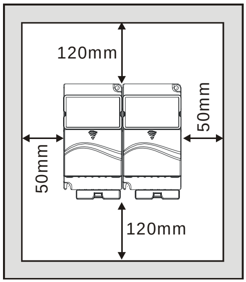
Minimum Mounting Clearances

Frame A Mounting Clearances

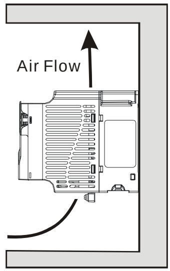
Option 1 (-10 to +50°C)



Option 2 (-10 to +40°C)

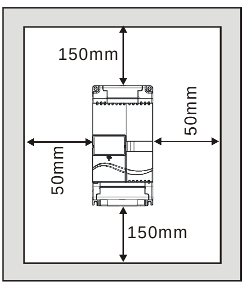


Air flow

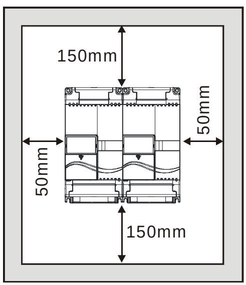


Frame B and C Mounting Clearances

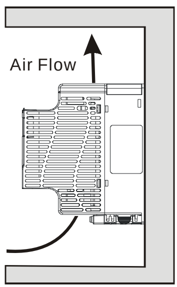
Option 1 (-10 to +50°C)



Option 2 (-10 to +40°C)

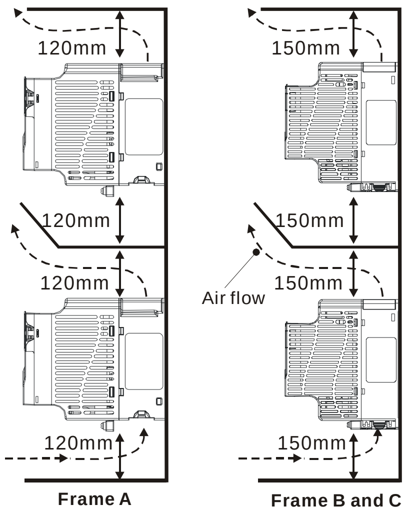
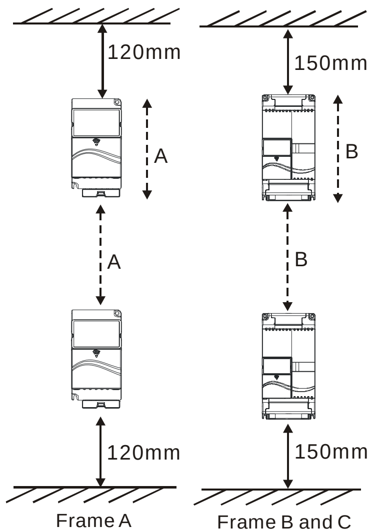


Air flow



CAUTION!

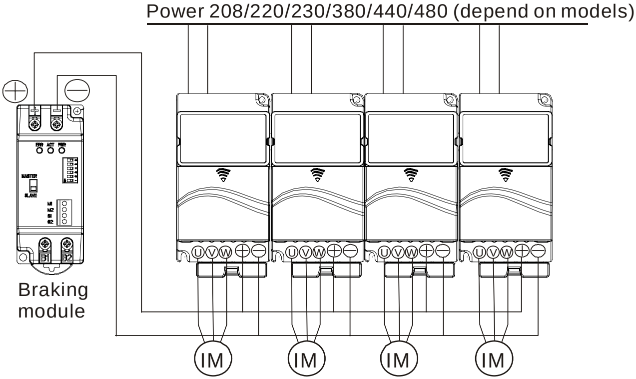
1. Operating, storing or transporting the AC motor drive outside these conditions may cause damage to the AC motor drive.
2. Failure to observe these precautions may void the warranty!
3. Mount the AC motor drive vertically on a flat vertical surface object by screws. Other directions are not allowed.
4. The AC motor drive will generate heat during operation. Allow sufficient space around the unit for heat dissipation.
5. The heat sink temperature may rise to 90°C when running. The material on which the AC motor drive is mounted must be noncombustible and be able to withstand this high temperature.
6. When AC motor drive is installed in a confined space (e.g. cabinet), the surrounding temperature must be within 10 ~ 40°C with good ventilation. DO NOT install the AC motor drive in a space with bad ventilation.
7. Prevent fiber particles, scraps of paper, saw dust, metal particles, etc. from adhering to the heatsink.
8. When installing multiple AC more drives in the same cabinet, they should be adjacent in a row with enough space in-between. When installing one AC motor drive below another one, use a metal separation between the AC motor drives to prevent mutual heating.

Installation with Metal Separation	Installation without Metal Separation
	

1.2.2 DC-bus Sharing: Connecting the DC-bus of the AC Motor Drives in Parallel

1. The AC motor drives can absorb mutual voltage that generated to DC bus when deceleration.
2. Enhance brake function and stabilize the voltage of the DC bus.
3. The brake module can be added to enhance brake function after connecting in parallel.
4. Only the same power system can be connected in parallel.
5. It is recommended to connect 5 AC motor drives in parallel (no limit in horsepower).

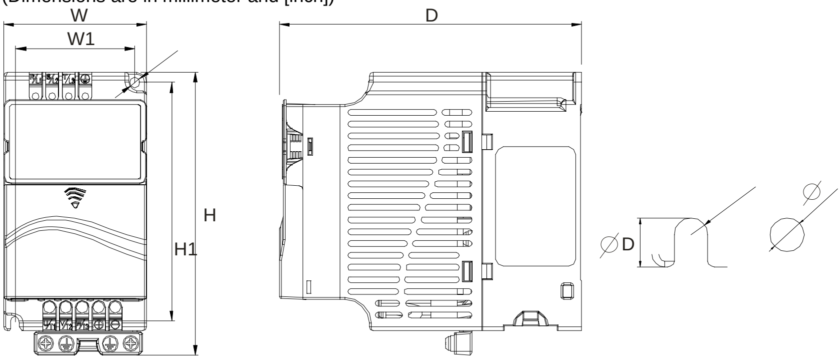
power should be applied at the same time
(only the same power system can be connected in parallel)



For frame A, terminal + (-) is connected to the terminal + (-) of the braking module.
For frame B and C, terminal +/B1 (-) is connected to the terminal + (-) of the braking module.

1.3 Dimensions

(Dimensions are in millimeter and [inch])



Frame	W	W1	H	H1	D	Ø	ØD
A	72.0[2.83]	60.0[2.36]	142.0[5.59]	120.0[4.72]	152.0[5.98]	5.2[0.04]	7.6[0.06]
B	100.0[3.94]	89.0[3.50]	174.0[6.86]	162.0[6.38]	152.0[5.98]	5.5[0.22]	9.3[0.36]
C	130.0[5.12]	116.0[4.57]	260.0[10.24]	246.5[9.70]	169.2[6.66]	5.5[0.22]	9.8[0.38]

NOTE

Frame A: ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF/4F, ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-1015-XXX-2T/4F

Frame B: ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF, ADV50-2022-XBX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-2037-XBX-2T/4F

Frame C: ADV50-3055-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3075-XBX-2T/4T, ADV50-3110-XBX-4F

Chapter 2 Installation and Wiring

After removing the front cover, check if the power and control terminals are clear. Be sure to observe the following precautions when wiring.

- General Wiring Information

Applicable Codes
All ADV50 series are Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) and Canadian Underwriters Laboratories (cUL) listed, and therefore comply with the requirements of the National Electrical Code (NEC) and the Canadian Electrical Code (CEC).

Installation intended to meet the UL and cUL requirements must follow the instructions provided in “Wiring Notes” as a minimum standard. Follow all local codes that exceed UL and cUL requirements. Refer to the technical data label affixed to the AC motor drive and the motor nameplate for electrical data.

The "Line Fuse Specification" in Appendix B, lists the recommended fuse part number for each ADV50 Series part number. These fuses (or equivalent) must be used on all installations where compliance with U.L. standards is a required.

CAUTION!

1. Make sure that power is only applied to the R/L1, S/L2, T/L3 terminals. Failure to comply may result in damage to the equipment. The voltage and current should lie within the range as indicated on the nameplate.
2. All the units must be grounded directly to a common ground terminal to prevent lightning strike or electric shock.
3. Please make sure to fasten the screw of the main circuit terminals to prevent sparks which is made by the loose screws due to vibration.
4. Check following items after finishing the wiring:
   A. Are all connections correct?
   B. No loose wires?
   C. No short-circuits between terminals or to ground?

DANGER!

1. A charge may still remain in the DC bus capacitors with hazardous voltages even if the power has been turned off. To prevent personal injury, please ensure that the power is turned off and wait ten minutes for the capacitors to discharge to safe voltage levels before opening the AC motor drive.
2. Only qualified personnel familiar with AC motor drives is allowed to perform installation, wiring and commissioning.
3. Make sure that the power is off before doing any wiring to prevent electric shock.

2.1 Wiring

Users must connect wires according to the circuit diagrams on the following pages. Do not plug a modem or telephone line to the RS-485 communication port or permanent damage may result. Terminals 1 & 2 are the power supply for the optional copy keypad only and should not be used for RS-485 communication.

Figure 1 for models of ADV50 Series

ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF, ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF

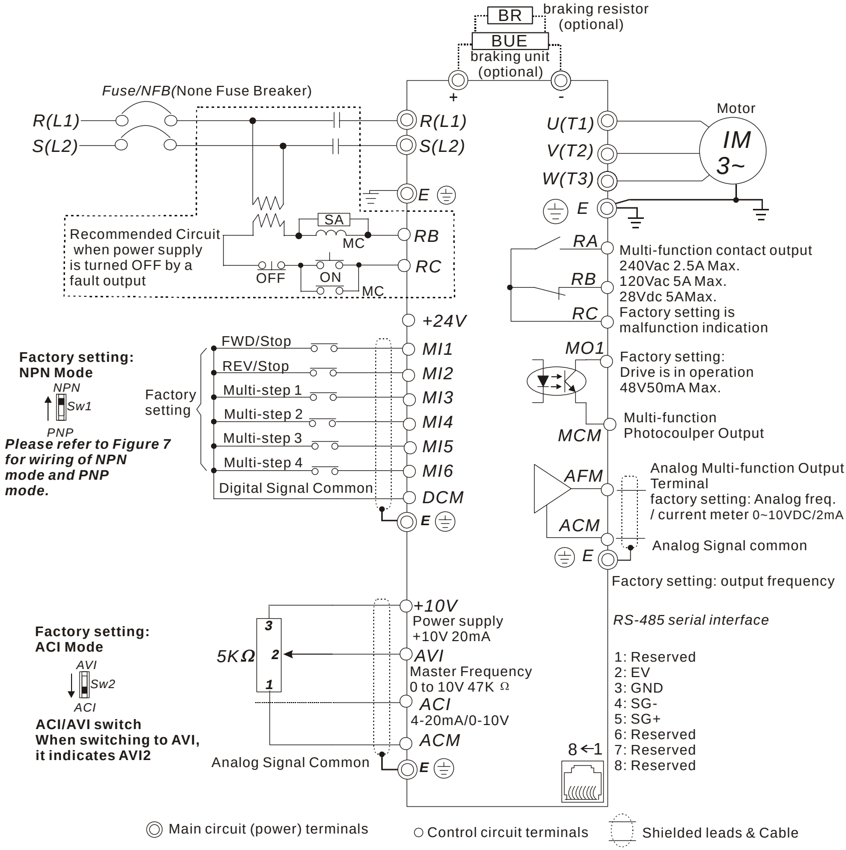


Figure 2 for models of ADV50 Series

ADV50-1004-XXX-4F, ADV50-1007-XXX-2T/4F, ADV50-1015-XXX-2T/4F

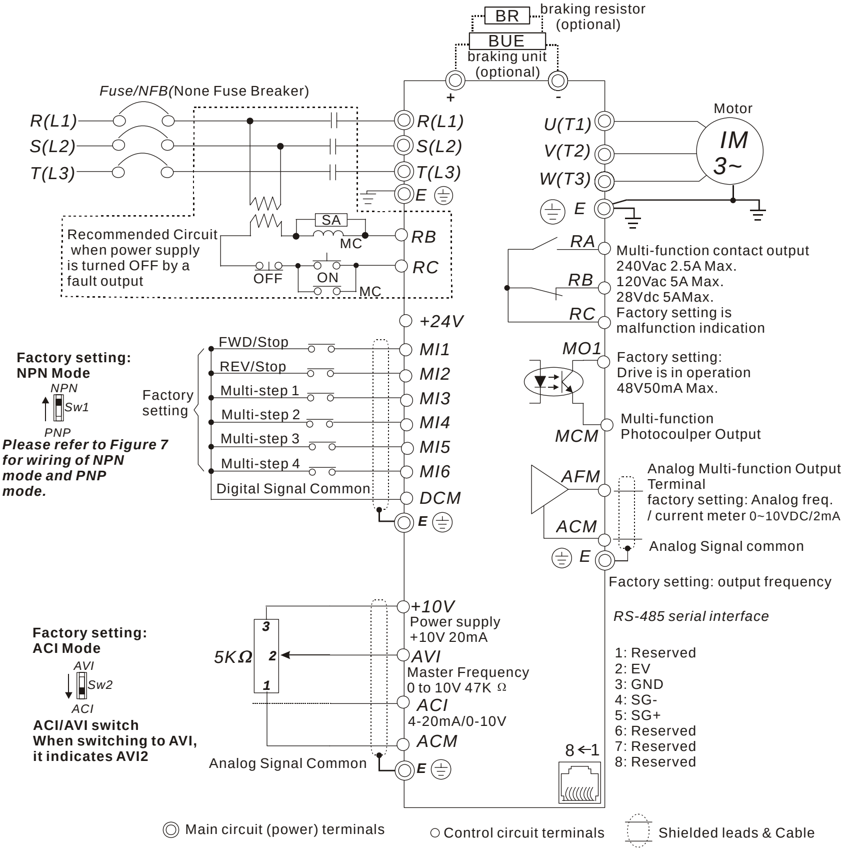


Figure 3 for models of ADV50 Series

ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF, ADV50-2022-XBX-2MF

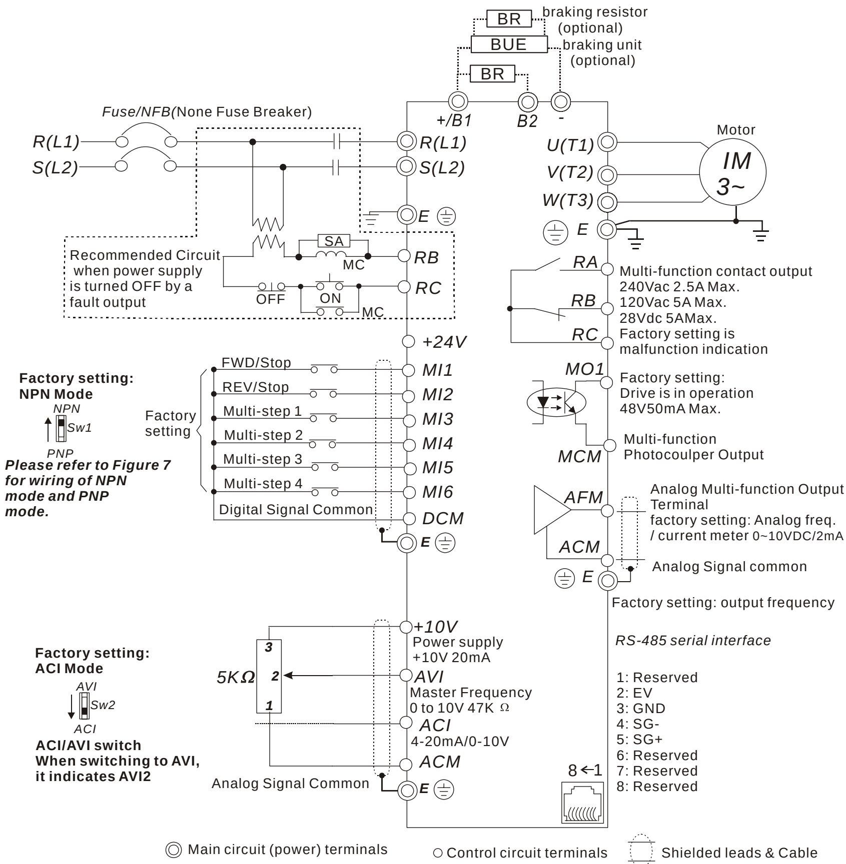


Figure 4 for models of ADV50 Series

ADV50-2022-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-2037-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3055E-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3075-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3110-XBX-4F

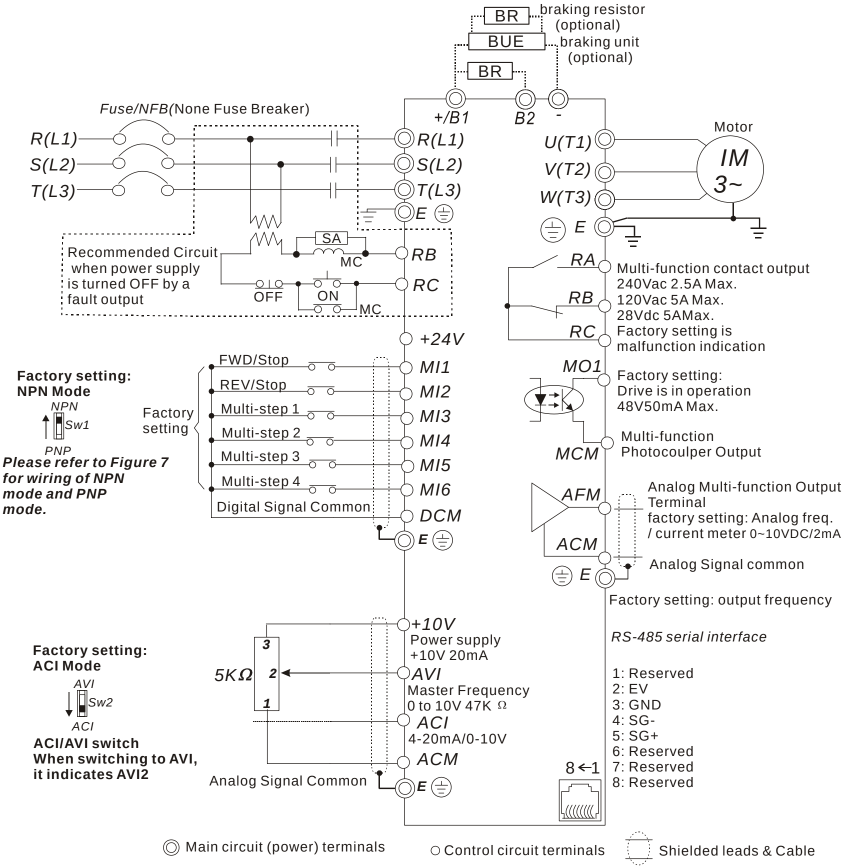
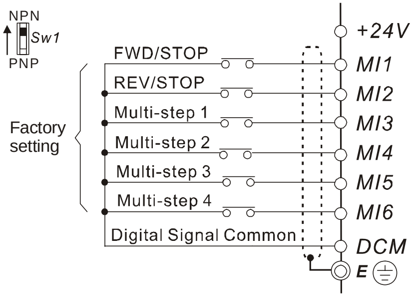
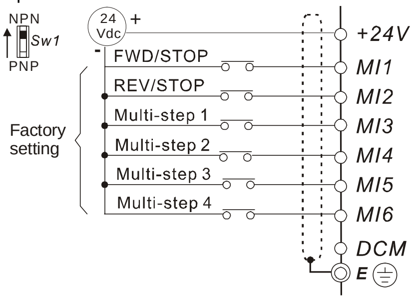


Figure 5 Wiring for NPN mode and PNP mode

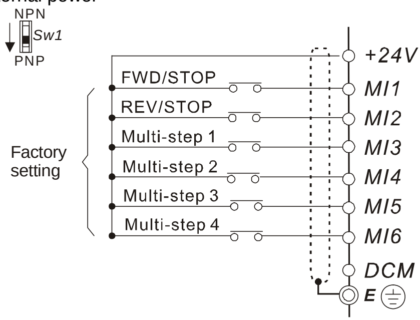
A. NPN mode without external power



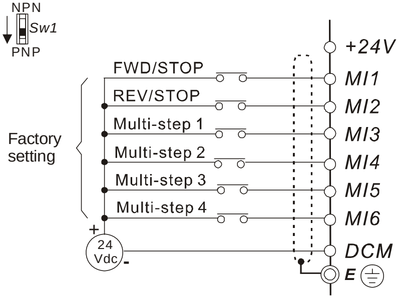
B. NPN mode with external power



C. PNP mode without external power



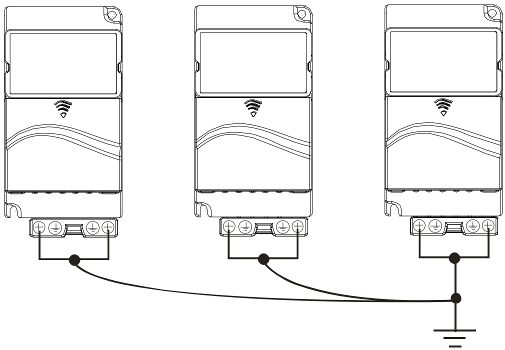
D. PNP mode with external power



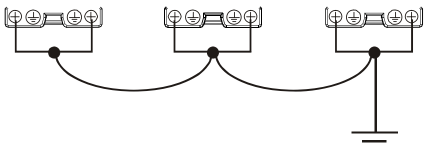
CAUTION!

1. The wiring of main circuit and control circuit should be separated to prevent erroneous actions.
2. Please use shield wire for the control wiring and not to expose the peeled-off net in front of the terminal.
3. Please use the shield wire or tube for the power wiring and ground the two ends of the shield wire or tube.
4. Damaged insulation of wiring may cause personal injury or damage to circuits/equipment if it comes in contact with high voltage.
5. The AC motor drive, motor and wiring may cause interference. To prevent the equipment damage, please take care of the erroneous actions of the surrounding sensors and the equipment.
6. When the AC drive output terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3 are connected to the motor terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3, respectively. To permanently reverse the direction of motor rotation, switch over any of the two motor leads.
7. With long motor cables, high capacitive switching current peaks can cause over-current, high leakage current or lower current readout accuracy. To prevent this, the motor cable should be less than 20m for 3.7kW models and below. And the cable should be less than 50m for 5.5kW models and above. For longer motor cables use an AC output reactor.
8. The AC motor drive, electric welding machine and the greater horsepower motor should be grounded separately.
9. Use ground leads that comply with local regulations and keep them as short as possible.
10. No braking resistor is built in the ADV50 series, it can install braking resistor for those occasions that use higher load inertia or frequent start/stop. Refer to Appendix B for details.

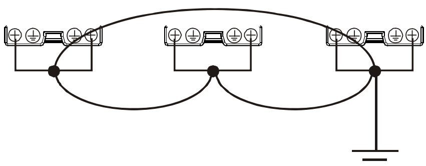
11. Multiple ADV50 units can be installed in one location. All the units should be grounded directly to a common ground terminal, as shown in the figure below. **Ensure there are no ground loops.**



Excellent

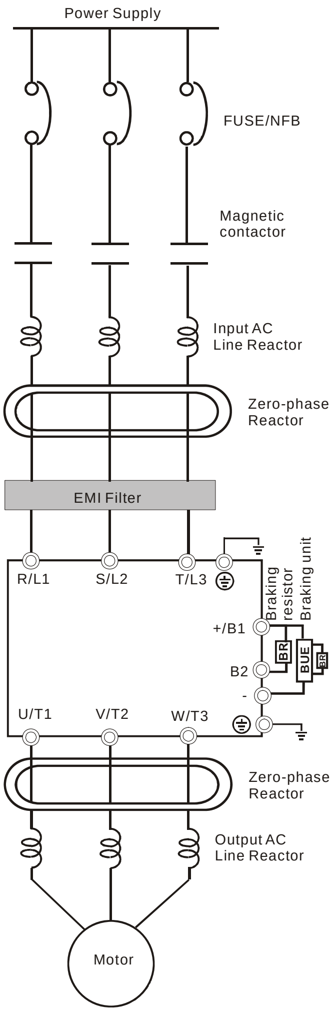


Good



X Not allowed

2.2 External Wiring



Items	Explanations
Power supply	Please follow the specific power supply requirements shown in Appendix A.
Fuse/NFB (Optional)	There may be an inrush current during power up. Please check the chart of Appendix B and select the correct fuse with rated current. Use of an NFB is optional.
Magnetic contactor (Optional)	Please do not use a Magnetic contactor as the I/O switch of the AC motor drive, as it will reduce the operating life cycle of the AC drive.
Input AC Line Reactor (Optional)	Used to improve the input power factor, to reduce harmonics and provide protection from AC line disturbances (surges, switching spikes, short interruptions, etc.). AC line reactor should be installed when the power supply capacity is 500kVA or more and exceeds 6 times the inverter capacity, or the mains wiring distance ≤ 10m.
Zero-phase Reactor (Ferrite Core Common Choke) (Optional)	Zero phase reactors are used to reduce radio noise especially when audio equipment is installed near the inverter. Effective for noise reduction on both the input and output sides. Attenuation quality is good for a wide range from AM band to 10MHz. Appendix B specifies the zero phase reactor. (RF-OUT-ADV20/50)
EMI filter	To reduce electromagnetic interference.
Braking Resistor and Braking Unit (Optional)	Used to reduce the deceleration time of the motor. Please refer to the chart in Appendix B for specific Braking Resistors.
Output AC Line Reactor (Optional)	Motor surge voltage amplitude depends on motor cable length. For applications with long motor cable (>20m), it is necessary to install a reactor at the inverter output side.

2.3 Main Circuit

2.3.1 Main Circuit Connection

Figure 1

For frame A: ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF/4-T, ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-1015-XXX-2T/4F

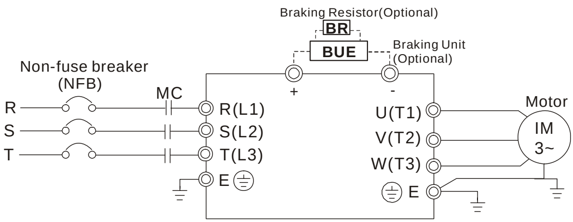
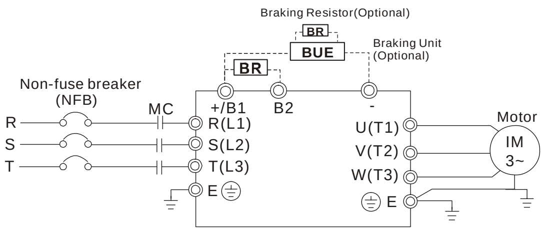


Figure 2

For frame B: ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF, ADV50-2022-XBX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-2037-XBX-2T/4F,

For frame C: ADV50-3055-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3075-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3110-XBX-4F



Terminal Symbol	Explanation of Terminal Function
R/L1, S/L2, T/L3	AC line input terminals (1-phase/3-phase)
U/T1, V/T2, W/T3	AC drive output terminals for connecting 3-phase induction motor
+/B1~ B2	Connections for Brake resistor (optional)
+/B1, -	Connections for External Brake unit (BU-2/4-ADV20/50 series)
⏚	Earth connection, please comply with local regulations.

CAUTION!

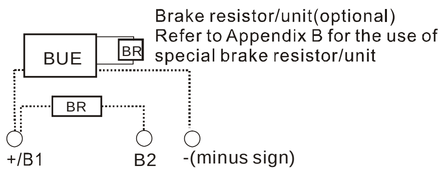
Mains power terminals (R/L1, S/L2, T/L3)

- Connect these terminals (R/L1, S/L2, T/L3) via a non-fuse breaker or earth leakage breaker to 3-phase AC power (some models to 1-phase AC power) for circuit protection. It is unnecessary to consider phase-sequence.
- It is recommended to add a magnetic contactor (MC) in the power input wiring to cut off power quickly and reduce malfunction when activating the protection function of AC motor drives. Both ends of the MC should have an R-C surge absorber.
- Please make sure to fasten the screw of the main circuit terminals to prevent sparks which is made by the loose screws due to vibration.
- Please use voltage and current within the regulation shown in Appendix A.
- When using a GFCI (Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter), select a current sensor with sensitivity of 200mA, and not less than 0.1-second detection time to avoid nuisance tripping.
- Do NOT run/stop AC motor drives by turning the power ON/OFF. Run/stop AC motor drives by RUN/STOP command via control terminals or keypad. If you still need to run/stop AC drives by turning power ON/OFF, it is recommended to do so only ONCE per hour.
- Do NOT connect 3-phase models to a 1-phase power source.

Output terminals for main circuit (U, V, W)

- The factory setting of the operation direction is forward running. The methods to control the operation direction are: method 1, set by the communication parameters. Please refer to the group 9 for details. Method2, control by the optional keypad KB-ADV50. Refer to Appendix B for details.
- When it needs to install the filter at the output side of terminals U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 on the AC motor drive. Please use inductance filter. Do not use phase-compensation capacitors or L-C (Inductance-Capacitance) or R-C (Resistance-Capacitance), unless approved by Gefran.
- DO NOT connect phase-compensation capacitors or surge absorbers at the output terminals of AC motor drives.
- Use well-insulated motor, suitable for inverter operation.

Terminals [+/B1, B2] for connecting brake resistor



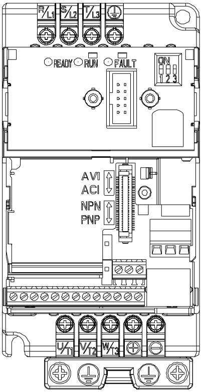
- Connect a brake resistor or brake unit in applications with frequent deceleration ramps, short deceleration time, too low braking torque or requiring increased braking torque.
- If the AC motor drive has a built-in brake chopper (frame B and frame C), connect the external brake resistor to the terminals [+/B1, B2].
- Models of frame A don’t have a built-in brake chopper. Please connect an external optional brake unit (BU-2/4-ADV20/50-series) and brake resistor. Refer to BU-2/4-ADV20/50 series user manual for details.
- Connect the terminals [+(P), -(N)] of the brake unit to the AC motor drive terminals [+/B1, -]. The length of wiring should be less than 5m with twisted cable.
- When not used, please leave the terminals [+/B1, -] open.

WARNING!

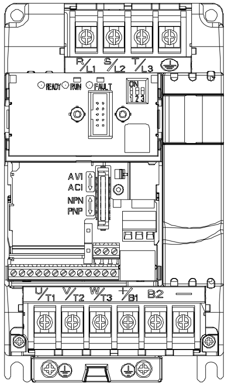
Short-circuiting [B2] or [-] to [+/B1] can damage the AC motor drive.

2.3.2 Main Circuit Terminals

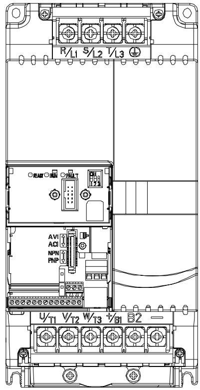
Frame A



Frame B



Frame C



Frame	Power Terminals	Torque	Wire	Wire type
A	R/L1, S/L2, T/L3	14kgf-cm (12in-lbf)	12-14 AWG. (3.3-2.1mm^2)	Copper only, 75^{o}C
	U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚			
B	R/L1, S/L2, T/L3	18kgf-cm (15.6in-lbf)	8-18 AWG. (8.4-0.8mm^2)	Copper only, 75^{o}C
	U/T1, V/T2, W/T3			
	+/B1, B2, -, ⏚			
C	R/L1, S/L2, T/L3	30kgf-cm (26in-lbf)	8-16 AWG. (8.4-1.3mm^2)	Copper only, 75^{o}C
	U/T1, V/T2, W/T3			
	+/B1, B2, - ⏚			

NOTE

Frame A: ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF/4F, ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-1015-XXX-2T/4F

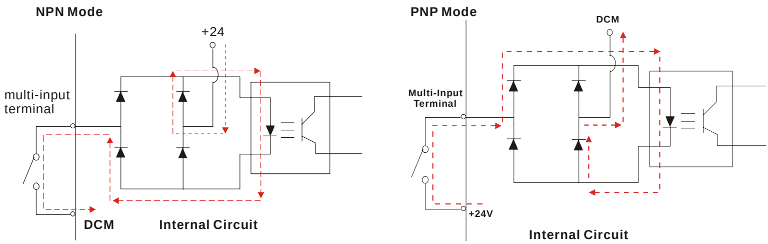
Frame B: ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF, ADV50-2022-XBX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-2037-XBX-2T/4F

Frame C: ADV50-3055-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3075-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3110-XBX-4F

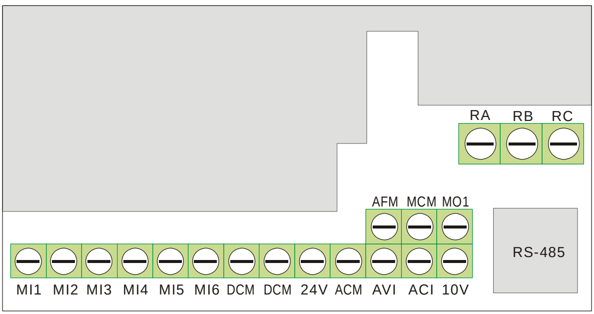
For frame C: To connect 6 AWG (13.3 mm^2) wires, use Recognized Ring Terminals

2.4 Control Terminals

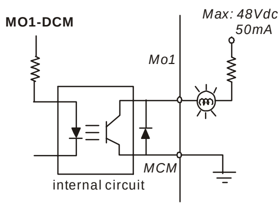
Circuit diagram for digital inputs (NPN current 16mA.)

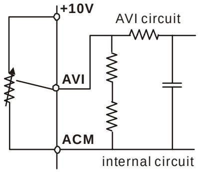
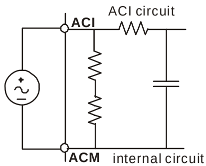
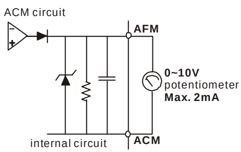


The position of the control terminals



Terminal symbols and functions

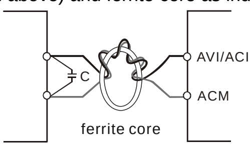
Terminal Symbol	Terminal Function	Factory Settings (NPN mode) ON: Connect to DCM
MI1	Forward-Stop command	ON: Run in MI1 direction OFF: Stop acc. to Stop Method
MI2	Reverse-Stop command	ON: Run in MI2 direction OFF: Stop acc. to Stop Method
MI3	Multi-function Input 3	Refer to Pr.04.05 to Pr.04.08 for programming the Multi-function Inputs. ON: the activation current is 5.5mA. OFF: leakage current tolerance is 10μA.
MI4	Multi-function Input 4	
MI5	Multi-function Input 5	
MI6	Multi-function Input 6	
+24V	DC Voltage Source	+24VDC, 20mA used for PNP mode.
DCM	Digital Signal Common	Common for digital inputs and used for NPN mode.
RA	Multi-function Relay output (N.O.) a	Resistive Load: 5A(N.O.)/3A(N.C.) 240VAC 5A(N.O.)/3A(N.C.) 24VDC Inductive Load: 1.5A(N.O.)/0.5A(N.C.) 240VAC 1.5A(N.O.)/0.5A(N.C.) 24VDC Refer to Pr.03.00 for programming
RB	Multi-function Relay output (N.C.) b	
RC	Multi-function Relay common	
MO1	Multi-function Output 1 (Photocoupler)	Maximum 48VDC, 50mA Refer to Pr.03.01 for programming 
MCM	Multi-function output common	Common for Multi-function Outputs
+10V	Potentiometer power supply	+10VDC 3mA

Terminal Symbol	Terminal Function	Factory Settings (NPN mode) ON: Connect to DCM
AVI	Analog voltage Input 	Impedance: 47kΩ Resolution: 10 bits Range: 0 ~ 10VDC = 0 ~ Max. Output Frequency (Pr.01.00) Selection: Pr.02.00, Pr.02.09, Pr.10.00 Set-up: Pr.04.14 ~ Pr.04.17
ACM	Analog control signal (common)	Common for AVI, ACI, AFM
ACI	Analog current Input 	Impedance: 250Ω Resolution: 10 bits Range: 4 ~ 20mA = 0 ~ Max. Output Frequency (Pr.01.00) Selection: Pr.02.00, Pr.02.09, Pr.10.00 Set-up: Pr.04.18 ~ Pr.04.21
AFM	Analog output meter 	0 to 10V, 2mA Impedance: 100kΩ Output current 2mA max Resolution: 8 bits Range: 0 ~ 10VDC Function: Pr.03.03 to Pr.03.04

NOTE: Control signal wiring size: 18 AWG (0.75 mm^2) with shielded wire.

Analog inputs (AVI, ACI, ACM)

- Analog input signals are easily affected by external noise. Use shielded wiring and keep it as short as possible (<20m) with proper grounding. If the noise is inductive, connecting the shield to terminal ACM can bring improvement.
- If the analog input signals are affected by noise from the AC motor drive, please connect a capacitor (0.1 μ F and above) and ferrite core as indicated in the following diagrams:



wind each wires 3 times or more around the core

Digital inputs (MI1~MI6, DCM)

- When using contacts or switches to control the digital inputs, please use high quality components to avoid contact bounce.

Digital outputs (MO1, MCM)

- Make sure to connect the digital outputs to the right polarity, see wiring diagrams.
- When connecting a relay to the digital outputs, connect a surge absorber or fly-back diode across the coil and check the polarity.

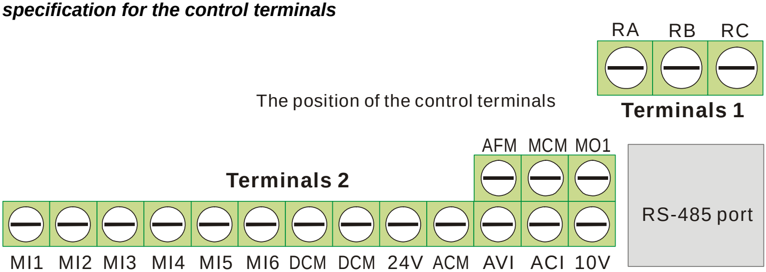
General

- Keep control wiring as far away as possible from the power wiring and in separate conduits to avoid interference. If necessary let them cross only at 90º angle.
- The AC motor drive control wiring should be properly installed and not touch any live power wiring or terminals.

DANGER!

Damaged insulation of wiring may cause personal injury or damage to circuits/equipment if it comes in contact with high voltage.

The specification for the control terminals



Frame	Control Terminals	Torque	Wire
A, B, C	Terminals 1	5 kgf-cm (4.4 in-lbf)	12-24 AWG (3.3-0.2mm^2)
	Terminals 2	2 kgf-cm (1.7 in-lbf)	16-24 AWG (1.3-0.2mm^2)

NOTE

Frame A: ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF/4F, ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-1015-XXX-2T/4F

Frame B: ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF, ADV50-2022-XBX-2MF/2T/4F, ADV50-2037-XBX-2T/4F

Frame C: ADV50-3055-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3075-XBX-2T/4F, ADV50-3110-XBX-4F

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 3 Keypad and Start Up

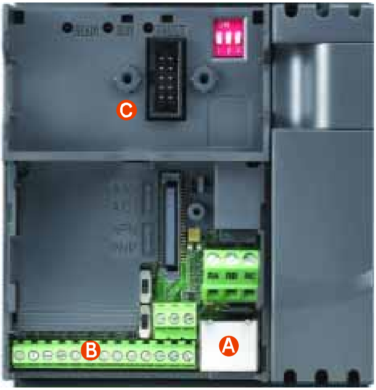
CAUTION	■ Make sure that the wiring is correct. In particular, check that the output terminals U/T1, V/T2, W/T3. are NOT connected to power and that the drive is well grounded. ■ Verify that no other equipment is connected to the AC motor drive ■ Do NOT operate the AC motor drive with humid hands. ■ Please check if READY LED is ON when power is applied. Check if the connection is well when option from the digital keypad KPE-LE02.
WARNING	■ It should be stopped when fault occurs during running and refer to “Fault Code Information and Maintenance” for solution. Please do NOT touch output terminals U, V, W when power is still applied to L1/R, L2/S, L3/T even when the AC motor drive has stopped. The DC-link capacitors may still be charged to hazardous voltage levels, even if the power has been turned off.

3.1 Keypad

There are three LEDs on the keypad:
LED READY: It will light up after applying power. The light won’t be off until the capacitors are discharged to safe voltage levels after power off.
LED RUN: It will light up when the motor is running.
LED FAULT: It will light up when fault occurs.

3.2 Operation Method

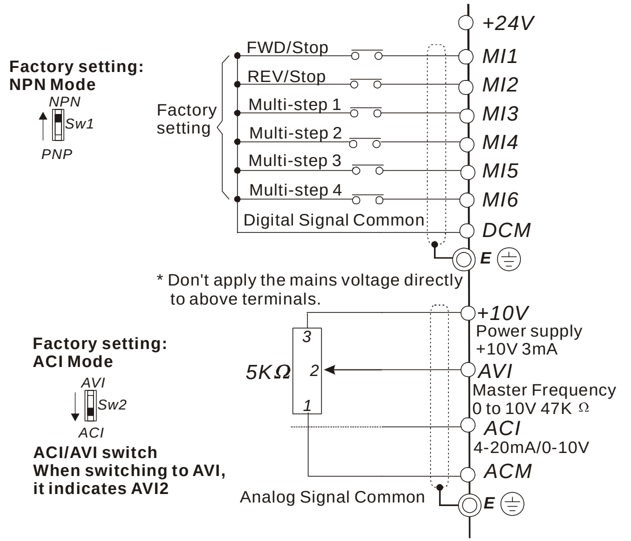
The operation method can be set via communication, control terminals and optional keypad KB-ADV50



A RS 485 port (RJ-45)
It needs to use USB-485 ADV20/50 converter to connect the PC

B Control terminal (MI1 to MI6)

C Keypad mounting port

Operation Method	Frequency Source	Operation Command Source
Operate from the communication	When setting communication by the PC, it needs to use EXP-USB-ADV50 or USB-485 ADV20/50 converter to connect to the PC. Refer to the communication address 2000H and 2101H setting for details.	
Operate from external signal	 Figure 3-1	
	MI3-DCM (Set Pr.04.05=10) MI4-DCM (Set Pr.04.06=11)	External terminals input: MI1-DCM MI2-DCM
Operate from the optional keypad (KB-ADV50)	▲ ▼	**STOP/RESET** : , **RUN**:

3.3 Trial Run

The factory setting of the operation source is from the external terminal (Pr.02.01=2).

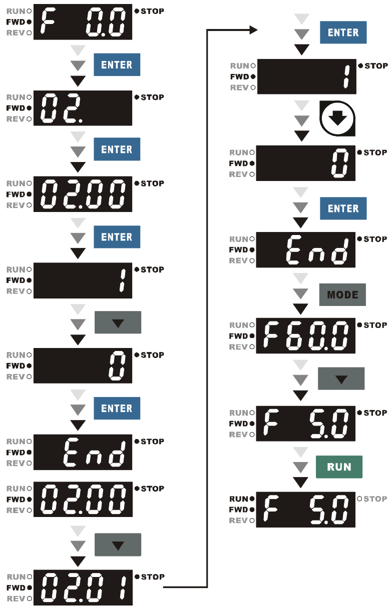
1. Both MI1-DCM and MI2-DCM need to connect a switch for switching FWD/STOP and REV/STOP.
2. Please connect a potentiometer among AVI, 10V and DCM or apply power 0-10Vdc to AVI-DCM (as shown in figure 3-1)

3. Setting the potentiometer or AVI-DCM 0-10Vdc power to less than 1V.
4. Setting MI1=On for forward running. And if you want to change to reverse running, you should set MI2=On. And if you want to decelerate to stop, please set MI1/MI2=Off.
5. Check following items:
   - *Check if the motor direction of rotation is correct.*
   - *Check if the motor runs steadily without abnormal noise and vibration.*
   - *Check if acceleration and deceleration are smooth.*

If you want to perform a trial run by using optional digital keypad, please operate by the following steps.

1. Connect digital keypad to AC motor drive correctly.
2. After applying the power, verify that LED display shows F 0.0Hz.
3. Set Pr.02.00=0 and Pr.02.01=0. (Refer to Appendix B operation flow for detail)
4. Press ▼ key to set frequency to around 5Hz.
5. Press  key for forward running. And if you want to change to reverse running, you should press ▼ in 

page. And if you want to decelerate to stop, please press  key.
6. Check following items:
   - Check if the motor direction of rotation is correct.
   - Check if the motor runs steadily without abnormal noise and vibration.
   - Check if acceleration and deceleration are smooth.



If the results of trial run are normal, please start the formal run.

Chapter 4 Parameters

The ADV50 parameters are divided into 14 groups by property for easy setting. In most applications, the user can finish all parameter settings before start-up without the need for re-adjustment during operation.

The 14 groups are as follows:

Group 0: User Parameters
Group 1: Basic Parameters
Group 2: Operation Method Parameters
Group 3: Output Function Parameters
Group 4: Input Function Parameters
Group 5: Multi-Step Speed Parameters
Group 6: Protection Parameters
Group 7: Motor Parameters
Group 8: Special Parameters
Group 9: Communication Parameters
Group 10: PID Control Parameters
Group 11: Multi-function Input/Output Parameters for Extension Card
Group 12: Analog Input/Output Parameters for Extension Card
Group 13: PG function Parameters for Extension Card

4.1 Summary of Parameter Settings

⊬: The parameter can be set during operation.

Group 0 User Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
00.00	Identity Code of the AC motor drive	Read-only	##	
00.01	Rated Current Display of the AC motor drive	Read-only	#.#	
00.02	Parameter Reset	0: Parameter can be read/written 1: All parameters are read only 6: Clear PLC program 9: All parameters are reset to factory settings (50Hz, 230V/400V or 220V/380V depends on Pr.00.12) 10: All parameters are reset to factory settings (60Hz, 220V/440V)	0	
⊬00.03	Start-up Display Selection	0: Display the frequency command value (Fxxx) 1: Display the actual output frequency (Hxxx) 2: Display the content of user-defined unit (Uxxx) 3: Multifunction display, see Pr.00.04 4: FWD/REV command 5: PLCx (PLC selections: PLC0/PLC1/PLC2)	0	
⊬00.04	Content of Multi-function Display	0: Display the content of user-defined unit (Uxxx) 1: Display the counter value (c) 2: Display PLC D1043 value (C 3: Display DC-BUS voltage (u) 4: Display output voltage (E) 5: Display PID analog feedback signal value (b) (%) 6: Output power factor angle (n)	0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
		7: Display output power (P) 8: Display the estimated value of torque as it relates to current (t) 9: Display AVI (I) (V) 10: Display ACI / AVI2 (i) (mA/V) 11: Display the temperature of IGBT (h) (°C) 12: Display AVI3/ACI2 level (I.) 13: Display AVI4/ACI3 level (i.) 14: Display PG speed in RPM (G)		
⁄⁄00.05	User-Defined Coefficient K	0. 1 to 160.0	1.0	
00.06	Power Board Software Version	Read-only	#.##	
00.07	Control Board Software Version	Read-only	#.##	
00.08	Password Input	0 to 9999	0	
00.09	Password Set	0 to 9999	0	
00.10	Control Method	0: V/f Control 1: Vector Control	0	
00.11	Reserved			
00.12	50Hz Base Voltage Selection	0: 230V/400V 1: 220V/380V	0	

Group 1 Basic Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
01.00	Maximum Output Frequency (Fmax)	50.00 to 600.0 Hz	60.00	
01.01	Maximum Voltage Frequency (Fbase)	0.10 to 600.0 Hz	60.00	
01.02	Maximum Output Voltage (Vmax)	230V series: 0.1V to 255.0V 460V series: 0.1V to 510.0V	220.0 440.0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
01.03	Mid-Point Frequency (Fmid)	0.10 to 600.0 Hz	1.50	
01.04	Mid-Point Voltage (Vmid)	230V series: 0.1V to 255.0V 460V series: 0.1V to 510.0V	10.0 20.0	
01.05	Minimum Output Frequency (Fmin)	0.10 to 600.0 Hz	1.50	
01.06	Minimum Output Voltage (Vmin)	230V series: 0.1V to 255.0V 460V series: 0.1V to 510.0V	10.0 20.0	
01.07	Output Frequency Upper Limit	0.1 to 120.0%	110.0	
01.08	Output Frequency Lower Limit	0.0 to100.0 %	0.0	
✓01.09	Accel Time 1	0.1 to 600.0 / 0.01 to 600.0 sec	10.0	
✓01.10	Decel Time 1	0.1 to 600.0 / 0.01 to 600.0 sec	10.0	
✓01.11	Accel Time 2	0.1 to 600.0 / 0.01 to 600.0 sec	10.0	
✓01.12	Decel Time 2	0.1 to 600.0 / 0.01 to 600.0 sec	10.0	
✓01.13	Jog Acceleration Time	0.1 to 600.0 / 0.01 to 600.0 sec	1.0	
✓01.14	Jog Deceleration Time	0.1 to 600.0 / 0.01 to 600.0 sec	1.0	
✓01.15	Jog Frequency	0.10 Hz to Fmax (Pr.01.00) Hz	6.00	
01.16	Auto acceleration / deceleration (refer to Accel/Decel time setting)	0: Linear Accel/Decel 1: Auto Accel, Linear Decel 2: Linear Accel, Auto Decel 3: Auto Accel/Decel (Set by load) 4: Auto Accel/Decel (set by Accel/Decel Time setting)	0	
01.17	Acceleration S-Curve	0.0 to 10.0 / 0.00 to 10.00 sec	0.0	
01.18	Deceleration S-Curve	0.0 to 10.0 / 0.00 to 10.00 sec	0.0	
01.19	Accel/Decel Time Unit	0: Unit: 0.1 sec 1: Unit: 0.01 sec	0	

Group 2 Operation Method Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
〃02.00	Source of First Master Frequency Command	0: Digital keypad UP/DOWN keys or Multi-function Inputs UP/DOWN. Last used frequency saved. 1: 0 to +10V from AVI 2: 4 to 20mA from ACI or 0 to +10V from AVI2 3: RS-485 (RJ-45)/USB communication 4: Digital keypad potentiometer 5: CANopen communication	1	
〃02.01	Source of First Operation Command	0: Digital keypad 1: External terminals. Keypad STOP/RESET enabled. 2: External terminals. Keypad STOP/RESET disabled. 3: RS-485 (RJ-45)/USB communication. Keypad STOP/RESET enabled. 4: RS-485 (RJ-45)/USB communication. Keypad STOP/RESET disabled. 5: CANopen communication. Keypad STOP/RESET disabled.	1	
02.02	Stop Method	0: STOP: ramp to stop; E.F.: coast to stop 1: STOP: coast to stop; E.F.: coast to stop 2: STOP: ramp to stop; E.F.: ramp to stop 3: STOP: coast to stop; E.F.: ramp to stop	0	
02.03	PWM Carrier Frequency Selections	1 to 15kHz	8	
02.04	Motor Direction Control	0: Enable forward/reverse operation 1: Disable reverse operation 2: Disabled forward operation	0	
02.05	Line Start Lockout	0: Disable. Operation status is not changed even if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed. 1: Enable. Operation status is not changed even if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed.	1	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
		2: Disable. Operation status will change if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed. 3: Enable. Operation status will change if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed.		
02.06	Loss of ACI Signal (4-20mA)	0: Decelerate to 0 Hz 1: Coast to stop and display “AErr” 2: Continue operation by last frequency command	1	
02.07	Up/Down Mode	0: by UP/DOWN Key 1: Based on accel/decel time 2: Constant speed (Pr.02.08) 3: Pulse input unit (Pr.02.08)	0	
02.08	Accel/Decel Rate of Change of UP/DOWN Operation with Constant Speed	0.01~10.00 Hz	0.01	
✓02.09	Source of Second Frequency Command	0: Digital keypad UP/DOWN keys or Multi-function Inputs UP/DOWN. Last used frequency saved. 1: 0 to +10V from AVI 2: 4 to 20mA from ACI or 0 to +10V from AVI2 3: RS-485 (RJ-45)/USB communication 4: Digital keypad potentiometer 5: CANopen communication	0	
✓02.10	Combination of the First and Second Master Frequency Command	0: First Master Frequency Command 1: First Master Frequency Command+ Second Master Frequency Command 2: First Master Frequency Command - Second Master Frequency Command	0	
✓02.11	Keypad Frequency Command	0.00 to 600.0Hz	60.00	
✓02.12	Communication Frequency Command	0.00 to 600.0Hz	60.00	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
02.13	The Selections for Saving Keypad or Communication Frequency Command	0: Save Keypad & Communication Frequency 1: Save Keypad Frequency only 2: Save Communication Frequency only	0	
02.14	Initial Frequency Selection (for keypad & RS485/USB)	0: by Current Freq Command 1: by Zero Freq Command 2: by Frequency Display at Stop	0	
02.15	Initial Frequency Setpoint (for keypad & RS485/USB)	0.00 ~ 600.0Hz	60.00	
02.16	Display the Master Freq Command Source	Read Only Bit0=1: by First Freq Source (Pr.02.00) Bit1=1: by Second Freq Source (Pr.02.09) Bit2=1: by Multi-input function Bit3=1: by PLC Freq command	##	
02.17	Display the Operation Command Source	Read Only Bit0=1: by Digital Keypad Bit1=1: by RS485 communication Bit2=1: by External Terminal 2/3 wire mode Bit3=1: by Multi-input function Bit4=1: by PLC Operation Command	##	

Group 3 Output Function Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
03.00	Multi-function Output Relay (RA1, RB1, RC1)	0: No function 1: AC drive operational 2: Master frequency attained 3: Zero speed	8	
03.01	Multi-function Output Terminal MO1	4: Over torque detection 5: Base-Block (B.B.) indication 6: Low-voltage indication 7: Operation mode indication	1	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
		8: Fault indication 9: Desired frequency attained 10: Terminal count value attained 11: Preliminary count value attained 12: Over Voltage Stall supervision 13: Over Current Stall supervision 14: Heat sink overheat warning 15: Over Voltage supervision 16: PID supervision 17: Forward command 18: Reverse command 19: Zero speed output signal 20: Warning(FbE,Cexx, AoL2, AUE, SAvE) 21: Brake control (Desired frequency attained)		
03.02	Desired Frequency Attained	0.00 to 600.0Hz	0.00	
✓03.03	Analog Output Signal Selection (AFM)	0: Analog frequency meter 1: Analog current meter	0	
✓03.04	Analog Output Gain	1 to 200%	100	
03.05	Terminal Count Value	0 to 9999	0	
03.06	Preliminary Count Value	0 to 9999	0	
03.07	EF Active When Terminal Count Value Attained	0: Terminal count value attained, no EF display 1: Terminal count value attained, EF active	0	
03.08	Fan Control	0: Fan always ON 1: 1 minute after AC motor drive stops, fan will be OFF 2: Fan ON when AC motor drive runs, fan OFF when AC motor drive stops 3: Fan ON when preliminary heatsink temperature attained	0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
03.09	The Digital Output Used by PLC	Read only Bit0=1:RLY used by PLC Bit1=1:MO1 used by PLC Bit2=1:MO2/RA2 used by PLC Bit3=1:MO3/RA3 used by PLC Bit4=1:MO4/RA4 used by PLC Bit5=1:MO5/RA5 used by PLC Bit6=1:MO6/RA6 used by PLC Bit7=1:MO7/RA7 used by PLC	##	
03.10	The Analog Output Used by PLC	Read only Bit0=1:AFM used by PLC Bit1=1: AO1 used by PLC Bit2=1: AO2 used by PLC	##	
03.11	Brake Release Frequency	0.00 to 20.00Hz	0.00	
03.12	Brake Engage Frequency	0.00 to 20.00Hz	0.00	
03.13	Display the Status of Multi-function Output Terminals	Read only Bit0: RLY Status Bit1: MO1 Status Bit2: MO2/RA2 Status Bit3: MO3/RA3 Status Bit4: MO4/RA4 Status Bit5: MO5/RA5 Status Bit6: MO6/RA6 Status Bit7: MO7/RA7 Status	##	

Group 4 Input Function Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
✗04.00	Keypad Potentiometer Bias	0.0 to 100.0 %	0.0	
✗04.01	Keypad Potentiometer Bias Polarity	0: Positive bias 1: Negative bias	00	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
✓04.02	Keypad Potentiometer Gain	0.1 to 200.0 %	100.0	
04.03	Keypad Potentiometer Negative Bias, Reverse Motion Enable/Disable	0: No negative bias command 1: Negative bias: REV motion enabled	0	
04.04	2-wire/3-wire Operation Control Modes	0: 2-wire: FWD/STOP, REV/STOP 1: 2-wire: FWD/REV, RUN/STOP 2: 3-wire operation	0	
04.05	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI3)	0: No function 1: Multi-Step speed command 1 2: Multi-Step speed command 2 3: Multi-Step speed command 3 4: Multi-Step speed command 4 5: External reset 6: Accel/Decel inhibit 7: Accel/Decel time selection command 8: Jog Operation 9: External base block 10: Up: Increment master frequency 11: Down: Decrement master frequency 12: Counter Trigger Signal 13: Counter reset 14: E.F. External Fault Input 15: PID function disabled 16: Output shutoff stop 17: Parameter lock enable 18: Operation command selection (external terminals) 19: Operation command selection(keypad)	1	
04.06	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI4)		2	
04.07	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI5)		3	
04.08	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI6)		4	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
		20: Operation command selection (communication) 21: FWD/REV command 22: Source of second frequency command 23: Run/Stop PLC Program (PLC1) 24: Download/execute/monitor PLC Program (PLC2)		
04.09	Multi-function Input Contact Selection	Bit0:MI1 Bit1:MI2 Bit2:MI3 Bit3:MI4 Bit4:MI5 Bit5:MI6 Bit6:MI7 Bit7:MI8 Bit8:MI9 Bit9:MI10 Bit10:MI11 Bit11:MI12 0:N.O., 1:N.C. P.S.:MI1 to MI3 will be invalid when it is 3-wire control.	0	
04.10	Digital Terminal Input Debouncing Time	1 to 20 (*2ms)	1	
04.11	Min AVI Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	0.0	
04.12	Min AVI Frequency	0.0 to 100.0%	0.0	
04.13	Max AVI Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	10.0	
04.14	Max AVI Frequency	0.0 to 100.0%	100.0	
04.15	Min ACI Current	0.0 to 20.0mA	4.0	
04.16	Min ACI Frequency	0.0 to 100.0%	0.0	
04.17	Max ACI Current	0.0 to 20.0mA	20.0	
04.18	Max ACI Frequency	0.0 to 100.0%	100.0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
04.19	ACI/AVI2 Selection	0: ACI 1: AVI2	0	
04.20	Min AVI2 Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	0.0	
04.21	Min AVI2 Frequency	0.0 to 100.0%	0.0	
04.22	Max AVI2 Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	10.0	
04.23	Max AVI2 Frequency	0.0 to 100.0%	100.0	
04.24	The Digital Input Used by PLC	Read only Bit0=1:MI1 used by PLC Bit1=1:MI2 used by PLC Bit2=1:MI3 used by PLC Bit3=1:MI4 used by PLC Bit4=1:MI5 used by PLC Bit5=1:MI6 used by PLC Bit6=1: MI7 used by PLC Bit7=1: MI8 used by PLC Bit8=1: MI9 used by PLC Bit9=1: MI10 used by PLC Bit10=1: MI11 used by PLC Bit11=1: MI12 used by PLC	##	
04.25	The Analog Input Used by PLC	Read only. Bit0=1:AVI used by PLC Bit1=1:ACI/AVI2 used by PLC Bit2=1: AI1 used by PLC Bit3=1: AI2 used by PLC	##	
04.26	Display the Status of Multi-function Input Terminal	Read only Bit0: MI1 Status Bit1: MI2 Status Bit2: MI3 Status	##	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
		Bit3: MI4 Status Bit4: MI5 Status Bit5: MI6 Status Bit6: MI7 Status Bit7: MI8 Status Bit8: MI9 Status Bit9: MI10 Status Bit10: MI11 Status Bit11: MI12 Status		
04.27	Internal/External Multi-function Input Terminals Selection	0~4095	0	
04.28	Internal Terminal Status	0~4095	0	

Group 5 Multi-Step Speeds Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
05.00	1st Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.01	2nd Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.02	3rd Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.03	4th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.04	5th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.05	6th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.06	7th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.07	8th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
05.08	9th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.09	10th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.10	11th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.11	12th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.12	13th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.13	14th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
05.14	15th Step Speed Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	

Group 6 Protection Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
06.00	Over-Voltage Stall Prevention	115/230V series: 330.0V to 410.0V 460V series: 660.0V to 820.0V 0.0: Disable over-voltage stall prevention	390.0V 780.0V	
06.01	Over-Current Stall Prevention during Accel	0:Disable 20 to 250%	170	
06.02	Over-Current Stall Prevention during Operation	0:Disable 20 to 250%	170	
06.03	Over-Torque Detection Mode (OL2)	0: Disabled 1: Enabled during constant speed operation. After the over-torque is detected, keep running until OL1 or OL occurs. 2: Enabled during constant speed operation. After the over-torque is detected, stop running. 3: Enabled during accel. After the over-torque is detected, keep running until OL1 or OL occurs.	0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
		4: Enabled during accel. After the over-torque is detected, stop running.		
06.04	Over-Torque Detection Level	10 to 200%	150	
06.05	Over-Torque Detection Time	0.1 to 60.0 sec	0.1	
06.06	Electronic Thermal Overload Relay Selection	0: Standard motor (self cooled by fan) 1: Special motor (forced external cooling) 2: Disabled	2	
06.07	Electronic Thermal Characteristic	30 to 600 sec	60	
06.08	Present Fault Record	0: No fault 1: Over current (oc) 2: Over voltage (ov) 3: IGBT Overheat (oH1) 4: Power Board Overheat (oH2) 5: Overload (oL) 6: Overload1 (oL1) 7: Motor over load (oL2)	0	
06.09	Second Most Recent Fault Record	8: External fault (EF) 9: Current exceeds 2 times rated current during accel.(ocA) 10: Current exceeds 2 times rated current during decel.(ocd) 11: Current exceeds 2 times rated current during steady state operation (ocn) 12: Ground fault (GFF) 13: Reserved 14: Phase-Loss (PHL) 15: Reserved		
06.10	Third Most Recent	16: Auto Acel/Decel failure (CFA) 17: SW/Password protection (codE)		

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
	Fault Record	18: Power Board CPU WRITE failure (cF1.0) 19: Power Board CPU READ failure (cF2.0) 20: CC, OC Hardware protection failure (HPF1)		
06.11	Fourth Most Recent Fault Record	21: OV Hardware protection failure (HPF2) 22: GFF Hardware protection failure (HPF3) 23: OC Hardware protection failure (HPF4) 24: U-phase error (cF3.0)		
06.12	Fifth Most Recent Fault Record	25: V-phase error (cF3.1) 26: W-phase error (cF3.2) 27: DCBUS error (cF3.3) 28: IGBT Overheat (cF3.4) 29: Power Board Overheat (cF3.5) 30: Control Board CPU WRITE failure (cF1.1) 31: Control Board CPU WRITE failure (cF2.1) 32: ACI signal error (AErr) 33: Reserved 34: Motor PTC overheat protection (PtC1) 35-39: Reserved 40: Communication time-out error of control board and power board (CP10)		

Group 7 Motor Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
⚡07.00	Motor Rated Current	30 %FLA to 120% FLA	FLA	
⚡07.01	Motor No-Load Current	0%FLA to 99% FLA	0.4*FLA	
⚡07.02	Torque Compensation	0.0 to 10.0	0.0	
⚡07.03	Slip Compensation (Used without PG)	0.00 to 10.00	0.00	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
07.04	Motor Parameters Auto Tuning	0: Disable 1: Auto tuning R1 2: Auto tuning R1 + no-load test	0	
07.05	Motor Line-to-line Resistance R1	0~65535 mΩ	0	
07.06	Motor Rated Slip	0.00 to 20.00 Hz	3.00	
07.07	Slip Compensation Limit	0 to 250%	200	
07.08	Torque Compensation Time Constant	0.01 ~10.00 Sec	0.10	
07.09	Slip Compensation Time Constant	0.05 ~10.00 sec	0.20	
07.10	Accumulative Motor Operation Time (Min.)	0 to 1439 Min.	0	
07.11	Accumulative Motor Operation Time (Day)	0 to 65535 Day	0	
07.12	Motor PTC Overheat Protection	0: Disable 1: Enable	0	
07.13	Input Debouncing Time of the PTC Protection	0~9999(*2ms)	100	
07.14	Motor PTC Overheat Protection Level	0.1~10.0V	2.4	
07.15	Motor PTC Overheat Warning Level	0.1~10.0V	1.2	
07.16	Motor PTC Overheat Reset Delta Level	0.1~5.0V	0.6	
07.17	Treatment of the Motor PTC Overheat	0: Warn and RAMP to stop 1: Warn and COAST to stop 2: Warn and keep running	0	

Group 8 Special Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
08.00	DC Braking Current Level	0 to 100%	0	
08.01	DC Braking Time during Start-Up	0.0 to 60.0 sec	0.0	
08.02	DC Braking Time during Stopping	0.0 to 60.0 sec	0.0	
08.03	Start-Point for DC Braking	0.00 to 600.0Hz	0.00	
08.04	Momentary Power Loss Operation Selection	0: Operation stops after momentary power loss 1: Operation continues after momentary power loss, speed search starts with the Master Frequency reference value 2: Operation continues after momentary power loss, speed search starts with the minimum frequency	0	
08.05	Maximum Allowable Power Loss Time	0.1 to 5.0 sec	2.0	
08.06	Base-block Speed Search	0: Disable speed search 1: Speed search starts with last frequency command 2: Starts with minimum output frequency	1	
08.07	B.B. Time for Speed Search	0.1 to 5.0 sec	0.5	
08.08	Current Limit for Speed Search	30 to 200%	150	
08.09	Skip Frequency 1 Upper Limit	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
08.10	Skip Frequency 1 Lower Limit	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
08.11	Skip Frequency 2 Upper Limit	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
08.12	Skip Frequency 2 Lower Limit	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
08.13	Skip Frequency 3 Upper Limit	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
08.14	Skip Frequency 3 Lower Limit	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
08.15	Auto Restart After Fault	0 to 10 (0=disable)	0	
08.16	Auto Reset Time at Restart after Fault	0.1 to 6000 sec	60.0	
08.17	Auto Energy Saving	0: Disable 1: Enable	0	
08.18	AVR Function	0: AVR function enable 1: AVR function disable 2: AVR function disable for decel. 3: AVR function disable for stop	0	
08.19	Software Braking Level	230V series: 370.0to 430.0V 460V series: 740.0 to 860.0V	380.0 760.0	
⁄⁄08.20	Compensation Coefficient for Motor Instability	0.0~5.0	0.0	

Group 9 Communication Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
⁄⁄09.00	Communication Address	1 to 254	1	
⁄⁄09.01	Transmission Speed	0: Baud rate 4800bps 1: Baud rate 9600bps 2: Baud rate 19200bps 3: Baud rate 38400bps	1	
⁄⁄09.02	Transmission Fault Treatment	0: Warn and keep operating 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning and keep operating	3	
⁄⁄09.03	Time-out Detection	0.1 ~ 120.0 seconds 0.0: Disable	0.0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
⚡09.04	Communication Protocol	0: 7,N,2 (Modbus, ASCII) 1: 7,E,1 (Modbus, ASCII) 2: 7,O,1 (Modbus, ASCII) 3: 8,N,2 (Modbus, RTU) 4: 8,E,1 (Modbus, RTU) 5: 8,O,1 (Modbus, RTU)	0	
09.05	Reserved			
09.06	Reserved			
⚡09.07	Response Delay Time	0 ~ 200 (unit: 2ms)	1	
⚡09.08	Transmission Speed for USB Card	0: Baud rate 4800 bps 1: Baud rate 9600 bps 2: Baud rate 19200 bps 3: Baud rate 38400 bps 4: Baud rate 57600 bps	2	
⚡09.09	Communication Protocol for USB Card	0: 7,N,2 for ASCII 1: 7,E,1 for ASCII 2: 7,O,1 for ASCII 3: 8,N,2 for RTU 4: 8,E,1 for RTU 5: 8,O,1 for RTU	1	
⚡09.10	Transmission Fault Treatment for USB Card	0: Warn and keep operating 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning and keep operating	0	
⚡09.11	Time-out Detection for USB Card	0.1 ~ 120.0 seconds 0.0: Disable	0.0	
09.12	COM port for PLC Communication	0: RS485 1: USB card	0	

Group 10 PID Control Parameters

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
10.00	PID Set Point Selection	0: Disable PID operation 1: Keypad (based on Pr.02.00) 2: 0 to +10V from AVI 3: 4 to 20mA from ACI or 0 to +10V from AVI2 4: PID set point (Pr.10.11)	0	
10.01	Input Terminal for PID Feedback	0: Positive PID feedback from external terminal AVI (0 ~ +10VDC) 1: Negative PID feedback from external terminal AVI (0 ~ +10VDC) 2: Positive PID feedback from external terminal ACI (4 ~ 20mA)/ AVI2 (0 ~ +10VDC). 3: Negative PID feedback from external terminal ACI (4 ~ 20mA)/ AVI2 (0 ~ +10VDC).	0	
10.02	Proportional Gain (P)	0.0 to 10.0	1.0	
10.03	Integral Time (I)	0.00 to 100.0 sec (0.00=disable)	1.00	
10.04	Derivative Control (D)	0.00 to 1.00 sec	0.00	
10.05	Upper Bound for Integral Control	0 to 100%	100	
10.06	Primary Delay Filter Time	0.0 to 2.5 sec	0.0	
10.07	PID Output Freq Limit	0 to 110%	100	
10.08	PID Feedback Signal Detection Time	0.0 to 3600 sec (0.0 disable)	60.0	
10.09	Treatment of the Erroneous PID Feedback Signals	0: Warn and RAMP to stop 1: Warn and COAST to stop 2: Warn and keep operation	0	
10.10	Gain Over the PID Detection Value	0.0 to 10.0	1.0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
✓10.11	Source of PID Set point	0.00 to 600.0Hz	0.00	
10.12	PID Offset Level	1.0 to 50.0%	10.0	
10.13	Detection Time of PID Offset	0.1 to 300.0 sec	5.0	
10.14	Sleep/Wake Up Detection Time	0.0 to 6550 sec	0.0	
10.15	Sleep Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
10.16	Wakeup Frequency	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	0.00	
10.17	Minimum PID Output Frequency Selection	0: By PID control 1: By minimum output frequency (Pr.01.05)	0	

Group 11 Parameters for Extension Card

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
11.00	Multi-function Output Terminal MO2/RA2	0: No function 1: AC drive operational 2: Master frequency attained 3: Zero speed 4: Over torque detection 5: Base-Block (B.B.) indication 6: Low-voltage indication 7: Operation mode indication 8: Fault indication 9: Desired frequency attained 10: Terminal count value attained 11: Preliminary count value attained 12: Over Voltage Stall supervision 13: Over Current Stall supervision 14: Heat sink overheat warning 15: Over Voltage supervision 16: PID supervision 17: Forward command 18: Reverse command 19: Zero speed output signal	0	
11.01	Multi-function Output Terminal MO3/RA3		0	
11.02	Multi-function Output Terminal MO4/RA4		0	
11.03	Multi-function Output Terminal MO5/RA5		0	
11.04	Multi-function Output Terminal MO6/RA6		0	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
11.05	Multi-function Output Terminal MO7/RA7	20: Warning(FbE,Cexx, AoL2, AUE, SAvE) 21: Brake control (Desired frequency attained)	0	
11.06	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI7)	0: No function 1: Multi-Step speed command 1 2: Multi-Step speed command 2	0	
11.07	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI8)	3: Multi-Step speed command 3 4: Multi-Step speed command 4 5: External reset	0	
11.08	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI9)	6: Accel/Decel inhibit 7: Accel/Decel time selection command 8: Jog Operation	0	
11.09	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI10)	9: External base block 10: Up: Increment master frequency 11: Down: Decrement master frequency	0	
11.10	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI11)	12: Counter Trigger Signal 13: Counter reset 14: E.F. External Fault Input 15: PID function disabled	0	
11.11	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI12)	16: Output shutoff stop 17: Parameter lock enable 18: Operation command selection (external terminals) 19: Operation command selection (keypad) 20: Operation command selection (communication) 21: FWD/REV command 22: Source of second frequency command 23: Run/Stop PLC Program (PLC1) 24: Download/execute/monitor PLC Program (PLC2)	0	

Group 12: Analog Input/Output Parameters for Extension Card

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
12.00	AI1 Function Selection	0: Disabled 1: Source of the 1st frequency 2: Source of the 2nd frequency 3: PID Set Point (PID enable) 4: Positive PID feedback 5: Negative PID feedback	0	
12.01	AI1 Analog Signal Mode	0: ACI2 analog current (0.0 ~ 20.0mA) 1: AVI3 analog voltage (0.0 ~ 10.0V)	1	
12.02	Min. AVI3 Input Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	0.0	
12.03	Min. AVI3 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	0.0	
12.04	Max. AVI3 Input Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	10.0	
12.05	Max. AVI3 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	100.0	
12.06	Min. ACI2 Input Current	0.0 to 20.0mA	4.0	
12.07	Min. ACI2 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	0.0	
12.08	Max. ACI2 Input Current	0.0 to 20.0mA	20.0	
12.09	Max. ACI2 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	100.0	
12.10	AI2 Function Selection	0: Disabled 1: Source of the 1st frequency 2: Source of the 2nd frequency 3: PID Set Point (PID enable) 4: Positive PID feedback 5: Negative PID feedback	0	
12.11	AI2 Analog Signal Mode	0: ACI3 analog current (0.0 ~ 20.0mA) 1: AVI4 analog voltage (0.0 ~ 10.0V)	1	

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
12.12	Min. AVI4 Input Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	0.0	
12.13	Min. AVI4 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	0.0	
12.14	Max. AVI4 Input Voltage	0.0 to 10.0V	10.0	
12.15	Max. AVI4 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	100.0	
12.16	Min. ACI3 Input Current	0.0 to 20.0mA	4.0	
12.17	Min. ACI3 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	0.0	
12.18	Max. ACI3 Input Current	0.0 to 20.0mA	20.0	
12.19	Max. ACI3 Scale Percentage	0.0 to 100.0%	100.0	
12.20	AO1 Terminal Analog Signal Mode	0: AVO1 1: ACO1 (analog current 0.0 to 20.0mA) 2: ACO1 (analog current 4.0 to 20.0mA)	0	
12.21	AO1 Analog Output Signal	0: Analog Frequency 1: Analog Current (0 to 250% rated current)	0	
12.22	AO1 Analog Output Gain	1 to 200%	100	
12.23	AO2 Terminal Analog Signal Mode	0: AVO2 1: ACO2 (analog current 0.0 to 20.0mA) 2: ACO2 (analog current 4.0 to 20.0mA)	0	
12.24	AO2 Analog Output Signal	0: Analog Frequency 1: Analog Current (0 to 250% rated current)	0	
12.25	AO2 Analog Output Gain	1 to 200%	100	

Group 13: PG function Parameters for Extension Card

Parameter	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting	Customer
13.00	PG Input	0: Disabled 1: Single phase 2: Forward/Counterclockwise rotation 3: Reverse/Clockwise rotation	0	
13.01	PG Pulse Range	1 to 20000	600	
13.02	Motor Pole Number	2 to 10	4	
≁13.03	Proportional Gain (P)	0.0 to 10.0	1.0	
≁13.04	Integral Gain (I)	0.00 to 100.00 sec	1.00	
≁13.05	Speed Control Output Frequency Limit	0.00 to 100.00Hz	10.00	
≁13.06	Speed Feedback Display Filter	0 to 9999 (*2ms)	500	
≁13.07	Detection Time for Feedback Signal Fault	0.0: disabled 0.1 to 10.0 sec	1	
≁13.08	Treatment of the Feedback Signal Fault	0: Warn and RAMP to stop 1: Warn and COAST to stop 2: Warn and keep operation	1	
≁13.09	Speed Feedback Filter	0 to 9999 (*2ms)	16	
13.10	Source of the High-speed Counter	0: PG card 1: PLC	Read Only	

4.2 Parameter Settings for Applications

Speed Search

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Windmill, winding machine, fan and all inertia loads	Restart free-running motor	Before the free-running motor is completely stopped, it can be restarted without detection of motor speed. The AC motor drive will auto search motor speed and will accelerate when its speed is the same as the motor speed.	08.04~08.08

DC Braking before Running

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
When e.g. windmills, fans and pumps rotate freely by wind or flow without applying power	Keep the free-running motor at standstill.	If the running direction of the free-running motor is not steady, please execute DC braking before start-up.	08.00 08.01

Energy Saving

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Punching machines fans, pumps and precision machinery	Energy saving and less vibrations	Energy saving when the AC motor drive runs at constant speed, yet full power acceleration and deceleration For precision machinery it also helps to lower vibrations.	08.17

Multi-step Operation

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Conveying machinery	Cyclic operation by multi-step speeds.	To control 15-step speeds and duration by simple contact signals.	04.05~04.08 05.00~05.14

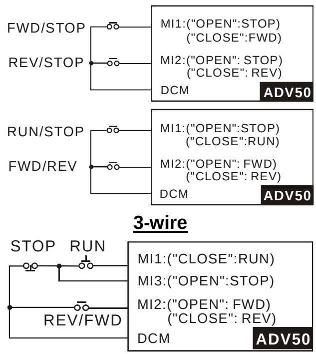
Switching acceleration and deceleration times

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Auto turntable for conveying machinery	Switching acceleration and deceleration times by external signal	When an AC motor drive drives two or more motors, it can reach high-speed but still start and stop smoothly.	01.09~01.12 04.05~04.08

Overheat Warning

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Air conditioner	Safety measure	When AC motor drive overheats, it uses a thermal sensor to have overheat warning.	03.00~03.01 04.05~04.08

Two-wire/three-wire

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	To run, stop, forward and reverse by external terminals		02.00 02.01 02.09 04.04

Operation Command

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Selecting the source of control signal	Selection of AC motor drive control by external terminals, digital keypad or RS485.	02.01 04.05~04.08

Frequency Hold

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Acceleration/ deceleration pause	Hold output frequency during Acceleration/deceleration	04.05~04.08

Auto Restart after Fault

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Air conditioners, remote pumps	For continuous and reliable operation without operator intervention	The AC motor drive can be restarted/reset automatically up to 10 times after a fault occurs.	08.15~08.16

Emergency Stop by DC Braking

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
High-speed rotors	Emergency stop without brake resistor	AC motor drive can use DC braking for emergency stop when quick stop is needed without brake resistor. When used often, take motor cooling into consideration.	08.00 08.02 08.03

Over-torque Setting

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Pumps, fans and extruders	To protect machines and to have continuous/ reliable operation	The over-torque detection level can be set. Once OC stall, OV stall and over-torque occurs, the output frequency will be adjusted automatically. It is suitable for machines like fans and pumps that require continuous operation.	06.00~06.05

Upper/Lower Limit Frequency

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Pump and fan	Control the motor speed within upper/lower limit	When user cannot provide upper/lower limit, gain or bias from external signal, it can be set individually in AC motor drive.	01.07 01.08

Skip Frequency Setting

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Pumps and fans	To prevent machine vibrations	The AC motor drive cannot run at constant speed in the skip frequency range. Three skip frequency ranges can be set.	08.09~08.14

Carrier Frequency Setting

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Low noise	The carrier frequency can be increased when required to reduce motor noise.	02.03

Keep Running when Frequency Command is Lost

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
Air conditioners	For continuous operation	When the frequency command is lost by system malfunction, the AC motor drive can still run. Suitable for intelligent air conditioners.	02.06

Output Signal during Running

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Provide a signal for running status	Signal available to stop braking (brake release) when the AC motor drive is running. (This signal will disappear when the AC motor drive is free-running.)	03.00~03.01

Output Signal in Zero Speed

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Provide a signal for running status	When the output frequency is lower than the min. output frequency, a signal is given for external system or control wiring.	03.00~03.01

Output Signal at Desired Frequency

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Provide a signal for running status	When the output frequency is at the desired frequency (by frequency command), a signal is given for external system or control wiring (frequency attained).	03.00~03.01

Output Signal for Base Block

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Provide a signal for running status	When executing Base Block, a signal is given for external system or control wiring.	03.00~03.01

Overheat Warning for Heat Sink

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	For safety	When heat sink is overheated, it will send a signal for external system or control wiring.	03.00~03.01

Multi-function Analog Output

Applications	Purpose	Functions	Related Parameters
General application	Display running status	The value of frequency, output current/voltage can be read by connecting a frequency meter or voltage/current meter.	03.06

4.3 Description of Parameter Settings

Group 0: User Parameters **✗This parameter can be set during operation.**

✗: This parameter can be set during operation.

00.00	Identity Code of the AC Motor Drive	
	Settings Read Only	Factory setting: ##
00.01	Rated Current Display of the AC Motor Drive	
	Settings Read Only	Factory setting: #.#

📖 Pr. 00.00 displays the identity code of the AC motor drive. The capacity, rated current, rated voltage and the max. carrier frequency relate to the identity code. Users can use the following table to check how the rated current, rated voltage and max. carrier frequency of the AC motor drive correspond to the identity code.

📖 Pr.00.01 displays the rated current of the AC motor drive. By reading this parameter the user can check if the AC motor drive is correct.

230V Series							
kW	0.4	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5
HP	0.5	1.0	2.0	3.0	5.0	7.5	10
Pr.00-00	2	4	6	8	10	12	14
Rated Output Current (A)	2.5	4.2	7.5	11.0	17	25	33
Max. Carrier Frequency	15kHz						

460V Series								
kW	0.4	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5	11
HP	0.5	1.0	2.0	3.0	5.0	7.5	10	15
Pr.00-00	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17
Rated Output Current (A)	1.5	2.5	4.2	5.5	8.5	13	18	24
Max. Carrier Frequency	15kHz							

00.02	Parameter Reset

Factory Setting: 0

Settings		
	0	Parameter can be read/written
	1	All parameters are read-only
	6	Clear PLC program
	9	All parameters are reset to factory settings (50Hz, 230V/400V or 220V/380V depends on Pr.00.12)
	10	All parameters are reset to factory settings (60Hz, 220V/440V)

📖 This parameter allows the user to reset all parameters to the factory settings except the fault records (Pr.06.08 ~ Pr.06.12).

50Hz: Pr.01.00 and Pr.01.01 are set to 50Hz and Pr.01.02 will be set by Pr.00.12.

60Hz: Pr.01.00 and Pr.01.01 are set to 60Hz and Pr.01.02 is set to 230V or 460V.

📖 When Pr.00.02=1, all parameters are read-only. To write all parameters, set Pr.00.02=0.

00.03 ✗Start-up Display Selection

Factory Setting: 0

Settings

0 Display the frequency command value (Fxxx)

1 Display the actual output frequency (Hxxx)

2 Display the output current in A supplied to the motor (Axxx)

3 Display the content of user-defined unit (Uxxx)

4 FWD/REV command

5 PLCx (PLC selections: PLC0/PLC1/PLC2)

📖 This parameter determines the start-up display page after power is applied to the drive.

📖 For setting 5, PLC0: disable, PLC1: run PLC, PLC2: read/write PLC programs into AC motor drive.

00.04 ✗Content of Multi-function Display

Factory Setting: 0

Settings

0 Display the content of user-defined unit (Uxxx)

1 Display the counter value which counts the number of pulses on TRG terminal

2 Display PLC D1043 value (C)

3 Display the actual DC BUS voltage in VDC of the AC motor drive

4 Display the output voltage in VAC of terminals U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 to the motor.

5 Display PID analog feedback signal value in %

6 Display the power factor angle in º of terminals U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 to the motor

00.04	✓Content of Multi-function Display	
7	Display the output power in kW of terminals U, V and W to the motor.	
8	Display the estimated value of torque in Nm as it relates to current.	
9	Display the signal of AVI analog input terminal (V).	
10	Display the signal of ACI analog input terminal (mA)or display the signal of AVI2 analog input terminal-(V).	
11	Display the temperature of IGBT (h) in °C	
12	Display AVI3/ACI2 level (I.)	
13	Display AVI4/ACI3 level (i.)	
14	Display PG speed in RPM (G)	

📖 When Pr00.03 is set to 03, the display is according to the setting of Pr00.04.

00.05	✓User Defined Coefficient K	Unit: 0. 1
Settings	0. 1 to d 160.0	Factory Setting: 1.0

📖 The coefficient K determines the multiplying factor for the user-defined unit.

The display value is calculated as follows:

U (User-defined unit) = Actual output frequency * K (Pr.00.05)

Example:

A conveyor belt runs at 13.6m/s at motor speed 60Hz.

K = 13.6/60 = 0.22 (0.226667 rounded to 1 decimal), therefore Pr.00.05=0.2

With Frequency command 35Hz, display shows U and 35*0.2=7.0m/s.

(To increase accuracy, use K=2.2 or K=22.7 and disregard decimal point.)

00.06	Power Board Software Version
Settings	Read Only
Display	#.##

00.07	Control Board Software Version
Settings	Read Only
Display	#.##

00.08	Password Input		Unit: 1
	Settings	0 to 9999	Factory Setting: 0
	Display	0~2 (times of wrong password)	

The function of this parameter is to input the password that is set in Pr.00.09. Input the correct password here to enable changing parameters. You are limited to a maximum of 3 attempts. After 3 consecutive failed attempts, a blinking “codE” will show up to force the user to restart the AC motor drive in order to try again to input the correct password.

00.09	Password Set			Unit: 1
	Settings	0 to 9999		Factory Setting: 0
	Display	0	No password set or successful input in Pr. 00.08	
		1	Password has been set	

To set a password to protect your parameter settings.

If the display shows 0, no password is set or password has been correctly entered in Pr.00.08. All parameters can then be changed, including Pr.00.09.

The first time you can set a password directly. After successful setting of password the display will show 1.

Be sure to record the password for later use.

To cancel the parameter lock, set the parameter to 0 after inputting correct password into Pr. 00.08.

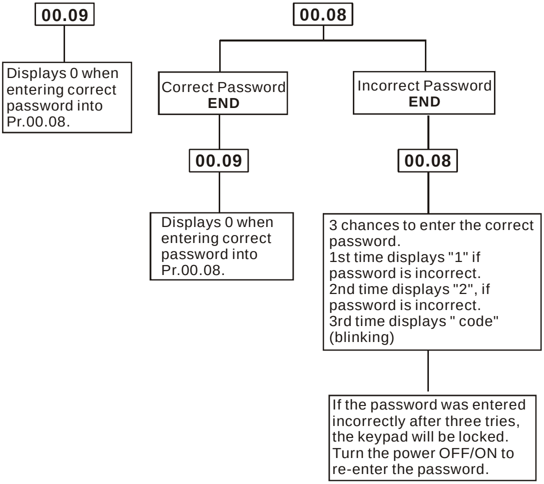
The password consists of min. 1 digits and max. 4 digits.

How to make the password valid again after decoding by Pr.00.08:

Method 1: Re-input original password into Pr.00.09 (Or you can enter a new password if you want to use a changed or new one).

Method 2: After rebooting, password function will be recovered.

Password Decode Flow Chart



00.10 Control Method

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	V/f Control
	1	Vector Control

📖 This parameter determines the control method of the AC motor drive.

00.11 Reserved

00.12 50Hz Base Voltage Selection

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	230V/400V
	1	220V/380V

📖 This parameter determines the base voltage for 50Hz.

Group 1: Basic Parameters

01.00	Maximum Output Frequency (Fmax)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	50.00 to 600.0 Hz	Factory Setting: 60.00

📖 This parameter determines the AC motor drive's Maximum Output Frequency. All the AC motor drive frequency command sources (analog inputs 0 to +10V and 4 to 20mA) are scaled to correspond to the output frequency range.

01.01	Maximum Voltage Frequency (Fbase)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.10 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 60.00

📖 This value should be set according to the rated frequency of the motor as indicated on the motor nameplate. Maximum Voltage Frequency determines the v/f curve ratio. For example, if the drive is rated for 460 VAC output and the Maximum Voltage Frequency is set to 60Hz, the drive will maintain a constant ratio of 7.66 V/Hz (460V/60Hz=7.66V/Hz). This parameter value must be equal to or greater than the Mid-Point Frequency (Pr.01.03).

01.02	Maximum Output Voltage (Vmax)			Unit: 0.1
	Settings	230V series	0.1 to 255.0V	Factory Setting: 220.0
		460V series	0.1 to 510.0V	Factory Setting: 440.0

📖 This parameter determines the Maximum Output Voltage of the AC motor drive. The Maximum Output Voltage setting must be smaller than or equal to the rated voltage of the motor as indicated on the motor nameplate. This parameter value must be equal to or greater than the Mid-Point Voltage (Pr.01.04).

01.03	Mid-Point Frequency (Fmid)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.10 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 1.50

📖 This parameter sets the Mid-Point Frequency of the V/f curve. With this setting, the V/f ratio between Minimum Frequency and Mid-Point frequency can be determined. This parameter must be equal to or greater than Minimum Output Frequency (Pr.01.05) and equal to or less than Maximum Voltage Frequency (Pr.01.01).

01.04	Mid-Point Voltage (Vmid)			Unit: 0.1
	Settings	230V series	0.1 to 255.0V	Factory Setting: 10.0
		460V series	0.1 to 510.0V	Factory Setting: 20.0

📖 This parameter sets the Mid-Point Voltage of any V/f curve. With this setting, the V/f ratio between Minimum Frequency and Mid-Point Frequency can be determined. This parameter must be equal to or greater than Minimum Output Voltage (Pr.01.06) and equal to or less than Maximum Output Voltage (Pr.01.02).

01.05	Minimum Output Frequency (Fmin)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.10 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 1.50

📖 This parameter sets the Minimum Output Frequency of the AC motor drive. This parameter must be equal to or less than Mid-Point Frequency (Pr.01.03).

📖 The settings of 01.03, 01.04, and 01.06 are invalid in Vector Control mode.

01.06	Minimum Output Voltage (Vmin)			Unit: 0.1
	Settings	230V series	0.1 to 255.0V	Factory Setting: 10.0
		460V series	0.1 to 510.0V	Factory Setting: 20.0

📖 This parameter sets the Minimum Output Voltage of the AC motor drive. This parameter must be equal to or less than Mid-Point Voltage (Pr.01.04).

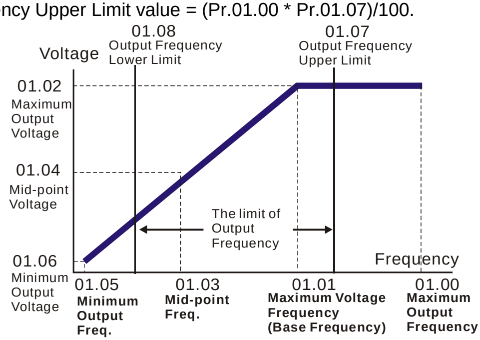
📖 The settings of Pr.01.01 to Pr.01.06 have to meet the condition of Pr.01.02 ≥ Pr.01.04 ≥ Pr.01.06 and Pr.01.01 ≥ Pr.01.03 ≥ Pr.01.05.

📖 In vector control mode (Pr.00.10 is set to 1), Pr.01.03, Pr.01.04 and Pr.01.06 are disabled.

01.07	Output Frequency Upper Limit		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.1 to 120.0%	Factory Setting: 110.0

📖 This parameter must be equal to or greater than the Output Frequency Lower Limit (Pr.01.08). The Maximum Output Frequency (Pr.01.00) is regarded as 100%.

📖 Output Frequency Upper Limit value = (Pr.01.00 * Pr.01.07)/100.



V/f Curve

01.08	Output Frequency Lower Limit	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0

- The Upper/Lower Limits are to prevent operation errors and machine damage.
- If the Output Frequency Upper Limit is 50Hz and the Maximum Output Frequency is 60Hz, the Output Frequency will be limited to 50Hz.
- If the Output Frequency Lower Limit is 10Hz, and the Minimum Output Frequency (Pr.01.05) is set to 1.0Hz, then any Command Frequency between 1.0-10Hz will generate a 10Hz output from the drive.
- This parameter must be equal to or less than the Output Frequency Upper Limit (Pr.01.07).
- The Output Frequency Lower Limit value = (Pr.01.00 * Pr.01.08) /100.

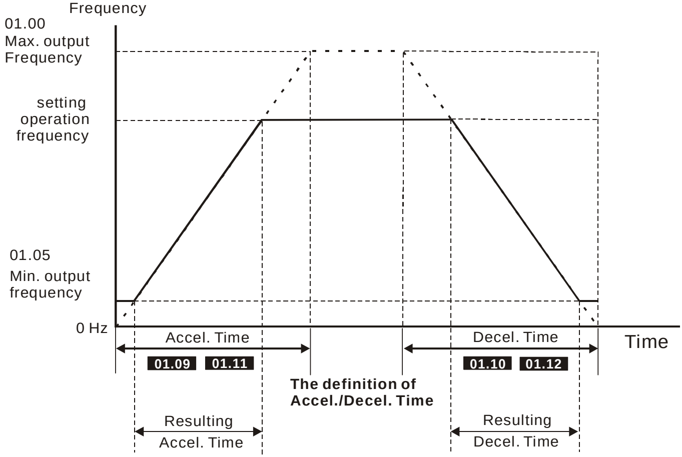
01.09	✓Acceleration Time 1 (Taccel 1)	Unit: 0.1/0.01
01.10	✓Deceleration Time 1 (Tdecel 1)	Unit: 0.1/0.01
01.11	✓Acceleration Time 2 (Taccel 2)	Unit: 0.1/0.01
01.12	✓Deceleration Time 2 (Tdecel 2)	Unit: 0.1/0.01
	Settings 0.1 to 600.0 sec / 0.01 to 600.0 sec	Factory Setting: 10.0

- Acceleration/deceleration time 1 or 2 can be switched by setting the external terminals MI3~ MI12 to 7 (set Pr.04.05~Pr.04.08 to 7 or Pr.11.06~Pr.11.11 to 7).

01.19	Accel/Decel Time Unit	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Unit: 0.1 sec
	1	Unit: 0.01 sec

- The Acceleration Time is used to determine the time required for the AC motor drive to ramp from 0 Hz to Maximum Output Frequency (Pr.01.00). The rate is linear unless S-Curve is "Enabled"; see Pr.01.17.
- The Deceleration Time is used to determine the time required for the AC motor drive to decelerate from the Maximum Output Frequency (Pr.01.00) down to 0 Hz. The rate is linear unless S-Curve is "Enabled.", see Pr.01.18.
- The Acceleration/Deceleration Time 1, 2, 3, 4 are selected according to the Multi-function Input Terminals Settings. See Pr.04.05 to Pr.04.08 for more details.
- In the diagram shown below, the Acceleration/Deceleration Time of the AC motor drive is the time between 0 Hz to Maximum Output Frequency (Pr.01.00). Suppose the Maximum Output

Frequency is 60 Hz, Minimum Output Frequency (Pr.01.05) is 1.0 Hz, and Acceleration/Deceleration Time is 10 seconds. The actual time for the AC motor drive to accelerate from start-up to 60 Hz and to decelerate from 60Hz to 1.0Hz is in this case 9.83 seconds. ((60-1) * 10/60=9.83secs).

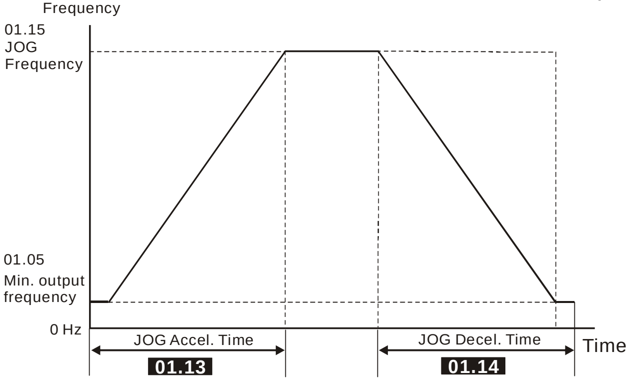


Resulting Accel./Decel. Time

01.13	⚡Jog Acceleration Time		Unit: 0.1/0.01
	Settings	0.1 to 600.0/0.01 to 600.0 sec	Factory Setting: 1.0
01.14	⚡Jog Deceleration Time		Unit: 0.1/0.01
	Settings	0.1 to 600.0/0.01 to 600.0 sec	Factory Setting: 1.0
01.15	⚡Jog Frequency		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.10 to Fmax (Pr.01.00)Hz	Factory Setting: 6.00

📖 Only external terminal JOG (MI3 to MI12) can be used. When the Jog command is “ON”, the AC motor drive will accelerate from Minimum Output Frequency (Pr.01.05) to Jog Frequency (Pr.01.15). When the Jog command is “OFF”, the AC motor drive will decelerate from Jog Frequency to zero. The used Accel/Decel time is set by the Jog Accel/Decel time (Pr.01.13, Pr.01.14).

📖 Before using the JOG command, the drive must be stopped first. And during Jog operation, other operation commands are not accepted, except commands via the FORWARD, REVERSE and STOP keys on the digital keypad.



The definition of JOG Accel./Decel. Time

01.16	⚡Auto-Acceleration / Deceleration

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Linear acceleration / deceleration
	1	Auto acceleration, linear Deceleration.
	2	Linear acceleration, auto Deceleration.
	3	Auto acceleration / deceleration (set by load)
	4	Auto acceleration / deceleration (set by Accel/Decel Time setting)

- With Auto acceleration / deceleration it is possible to reduce vibration and shocks during starting/stopping the load.
  During Auto acceleration the torque is automatically measured and the drive will accelerate to the set frequency with the fastest acceleration time and the smoothest starting current.
  During Auto deceleration, regenerative energy is measured and the motor is smoothly stopped with the fastest deceleration time.
  But when this parameter is set to 04, the actual accel/decel time will be equal to or more than parameter Pr.01.09 ~Pr.01.12.
- Auto acceleration/deceleration makes the complicated processes of tuning unnecessary. It makes operation efficient and saves energy by acceleration without stall and deceleration without brake resistor.
- In applications with brake resistor or brake unit, Auto deceleration shall not be used.

01.17	Acceleration S-Curve	Unit: 0.1/0.01
01.18	Deceleration S-Curve	Unit: 0.1/0.01

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0.0	S-curve disabled
	0.1 to 10.0/0.01 to 10.00	S-curve enabled (10.0/10.00 is the smoothest)

📖 This parameter is used to ensure smooth acceleration and deceleration via S-curve.

The S-curve is disabled when set to 0.0 and enabled when set to 0.1 to 10.0/0.01 to 10.00.

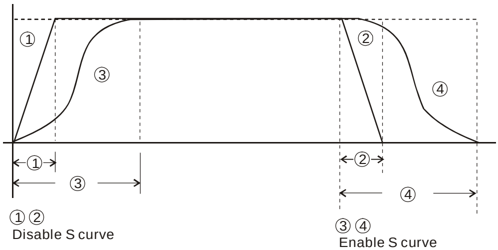
Setting 0.1/0.01 gives the quickest and setting 10.0/10.00 the longest and smoothest S-curve.

The AC motor drive will not follow the Accel/Decel Times in Pr.01.09 to Pr.01.12.

📖 The diagram below shows that the original setting of the Accel/Decel Time is only for reference when the S-curve is enabled. The actual Accel/Decel Time depends on the selected S-curve (0.1 to 10.0).

The total Accel. Time=Pr.01.09 + Pr.01.17 or Pr.01.11 + Pr.01.17

The total Decel. Time=Pr.01.10 + Pr.01.18 or Pr.01.12 + Pr.01.18



Acceleration/deceleration Characteristics

Group 2: Operation Method Parameters

02.00	Source of First Master Frequency Command

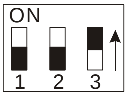
Factory Setting: 1

02.09	Source of Second Master Frequency Command

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Digital keypad UP/DOWN keys or Multi-function Inputs UP/DOWN. Last used frequency saved. (Digital keypad is optional)
	1	0 to +10V from AVI
	2	4 to 20mA from ACI or 0 to +10V from AVI2
	3	RS-485 (RJ-45)/USB communication
	4	Digital keypad potentiometer
	5	CANopen communication

- These parameters set the Master Frequency Command Source of the AC motor drive.
- The factory setting for master frequency command is 1. (digital keypad is optional.)
- Setting 2: use the ACI/AVI switch on the AC motor drive to select ACI or AVI2. When setting to AVI, AVI2 is indicated.
- When the 3rd switch on the upper-right corner is set to be ON as shown in the following diagram, the source of first master frequency command (Pr.02.00) will force setting to 2. This setting(Pr.02.00) can't be changed till the 3rd switch is set to be OFF.



- When the AC motor drive is controlled by external terminal, please refer to Pr.02.05 for details.
- The first /second frequency/operation command is enabled/disabled by Multi Function Input Terminals. Please refer to Pr.04.05 ~ 04.08.

02.01	Source of First Operation Command

Factory Setting: 1

Settings	0	Digital keypad (Digital keypad is optional)
	1	External terminals. Keypad STOP/RESET enabled.
	2	External terminals. Keypad STOP/RESET disabled.
	3	RS-485 (RJ-45)/USB communication. Keypad STOP/RESET enabled.
	4	RS-485 (RJ-45)/USB communication. Keypad STOP/RESET disabled.
	5	CANopen communication. Keypad STOP/RESET disabled.

- The factory setting for source of first operation command is 1. (digital keypad is optional.)
- When the AC motor drive is controlled by external terminal, please refer to Pr.02.05/Pr.04.04 for details.

02.10	✎Combination of the First and Second Master Frequency Command

Factory Setting: 0

Settings		
	0	First Master Frequency Command Only
	1	First Master Frequency + Second Master Frequency
	2	First Master Frequency - Second Master Frequency

02.02	Stop Method

Factory Setting: 0

Settings			
	0	STOP: ramp to stop	E.F.: coast to stop
	1	STOP: coast to stop	E.F.: coast to stop
	2	STOP: ramp to stop	E.F.: ramp to stop
	3	STOP: coast to stop	E.F.: ramp to stop

- When the 2nd switch on the upper-right corner is set to be ON as shown in the following diagram, the motor stop method (Pr.02.02) will force setting to 1. This setting (Pr.02.02) can't be changed till the 2nd switch is set to be OFF.

- The parameter determines how the motor is stopped when the AC motor drive receives a valid stop command or detects External Fault.

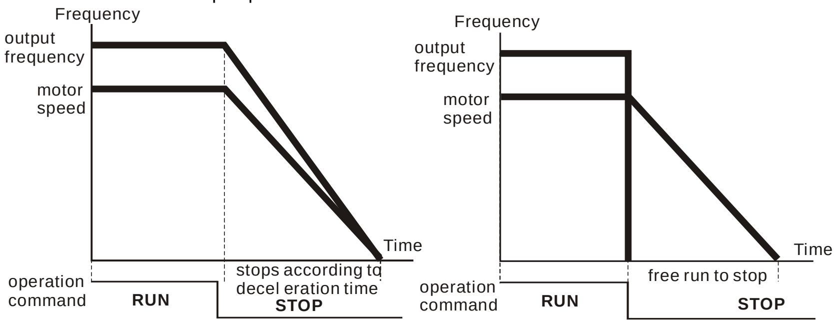
Ramp: the AC motor drive decelerates to Minimum Output Frequency (Pr.01.05) according to the deceleration time and then stops.

Coast: the AC motor drive stops the output instantly upon command, and the motor free runs until it comes to a complete standstill.

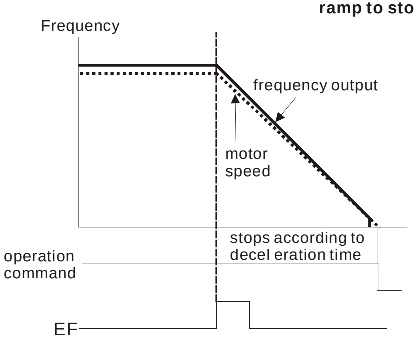
The motor stop method is usually determined by the characteristics of the motor load and how frequently it is stopped.

(1) It is recommended to use "ramp to stop" for safety of personnel or to prevent material from being wasted in applications where the motor has to stop after the drive is stopped. The deceleration time has to be set accordingly.

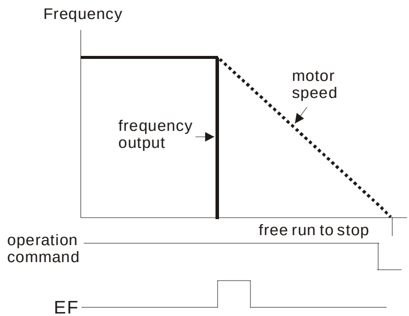
(2) If motor free running is allowed or the load inertia is large, it is recommended to select “coast to stop”. For example: blowers, punching machines, centrifuges and pumps.



ramp to stop and free run to stop



When Pr.02.02 is set to 2 or 3



When Pr.02.02 is set to 0 or 1

02.03	PWM Carrier Frequency Selections	Unit: 1

230V/460V Series	
Power	0.5 to 15hp (0.4kW to 11kW)
Setting Range	1 to 15 kHz
Factory Setting	8 kHz

🕮 This parameter determines the PWM carrier frequency of the AC motor drive.

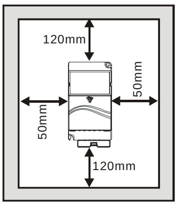
Carrier Frequency	Acoustic Noise	Electromagnetic Noise or leakage current	Heat Dissipation	Current Wave
1kHz	Significant	Minimal	Minimal	Minimal
8kHz	↕	↕	↕	↕
15kHz	Minimal	Significant	Significant	Significant

- From the table, we see that the PWM carrier frequency has a significant influence on the electromagnetic noise, AC motor drive heat dissipation, and motor acoustic noise.
- The PWM carrier frequency will be decreased automatically by heat sink temperature and output current of the AC motor drive. It is used as a necessary precaution to prevent the AC motor drive from overheating and thus extends IGBT’s life. Example for 460V models: Assume the carrier frequency to be 15kHz, the ambient temperature is 50 degrees C with a single AC motor drive(mounting method A). If the output current exceeds 80% * rated current, the AC motor drive will decrease the carrier frequency automatically according to the following chart. If output current is 100% * rated current, the carrier frequency will decrease from 15kHz to 12kHz.

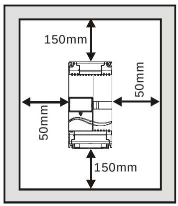
Mounting method

Method A

Frame A

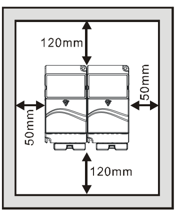


Frame B & C

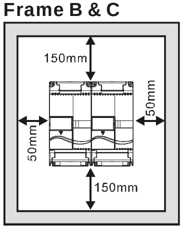


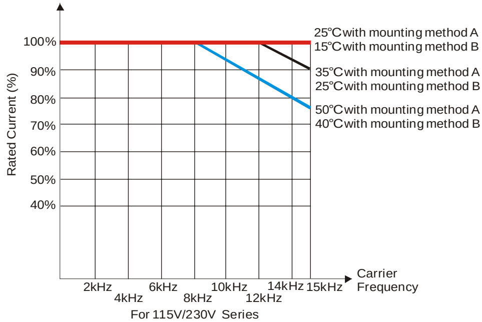
Method B

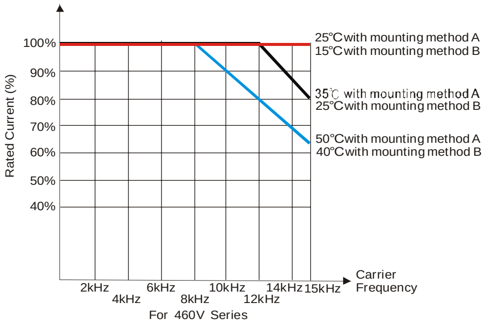
Frame A



Frame B & C







02.04	Motor Direction Control

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Forward/Reverse operation enabled
	1	Reverse operation disabled
	2	Forward operation disabled

📖 This parameter is used to disable one direction of rotation of the AC motor drive direction of rotation.

02.05 Line Start Lockout

Factory Setting: 1

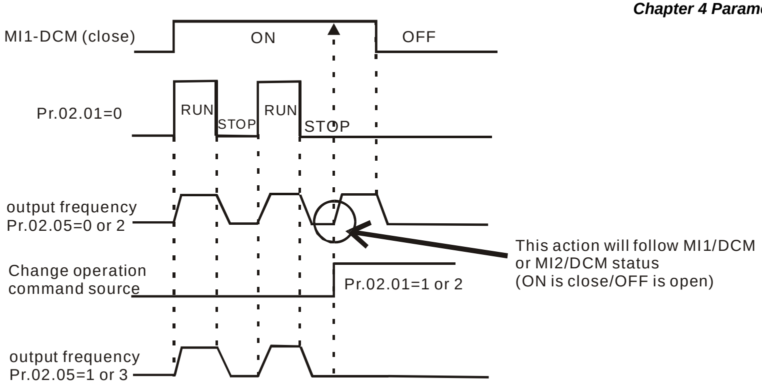
Settings		
	0	Disable. Operation status is not changed even if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed.
	1	Enable. Operation status is not changed even if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed.
	2	Disable. Operation status will change if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed.
	3	Enable. Operation status will change if operation command source Pr.02.01 is changed.

📖 This parameter determines the response of the drive upon power on and operation command source is changed.

Pr.02.05	Start lockout (Run when power is ON)	Operation status when operation command source is changed
0	Disable (AC motor drive will run)	Keep previous status
1	Enable (AC motor drive doesn't run)	Keep previous status
2	Disable (AC motor drive will run)	Change according to the new operation command source
3	Enable (AC motor drive doesn't run)	Change according to the new operation command source

📖 When the operation command source is from external terminal and operation command is ON (MI1/MI2-DCM=closed), the AC motor drive will operate according to Pr.02.05 after power is applied. **<For terminals MI1 and MI2 only>**

1. When Pr.02.05 is set to 0 or 2, AC motor drive will run immediately.
2. When Pr.02.05 is set to 1 or 3, AC motor drive will remain stopped until operation command is received after previous operation command is cancelled.

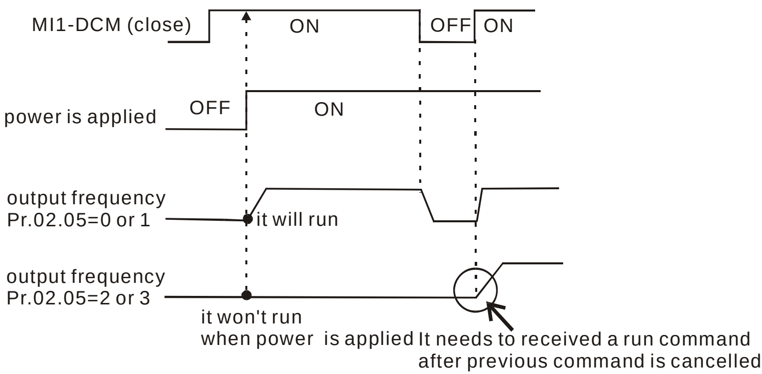


When the operation command source isn't from the external terminals, independently from whether the AC motor drive runs or stops, the AC motor drive will operate according to Pr.02.05 if the two conditions below are both met.

1. When operation command source is changed to external terminal (Pr.02.01=1 or 2)
2. The status of terminal and AC motor drive is different.

And the operation of the AC motor drive will be:

1. When setting 0 or 1, the status of AC motor drive is not changed by the terminal status.
2. When setting 2 or 3, the status of AC motor drive is changed by the terminal status.



The Line Start Lockout feature does not guarantee that the motor will never start under this condition. It is possible the motor may be set in motion by a malfunctioning switch.

02.06	Loss of ACI Signal (4-20mA)	

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Decelerate to 0Hz
	1	Coast to stop and display “AErr”
	2	Continue operation by the last frequency command

- This parameter determines the behavior when ACI is lost.
- When set to 1, it will display warning message “AErr” on the keypad in case of loss of ACI signal and execute the setting. When ACI signal is recovered, the warning message will stop blinking. Please press “RESET” key to clear it.

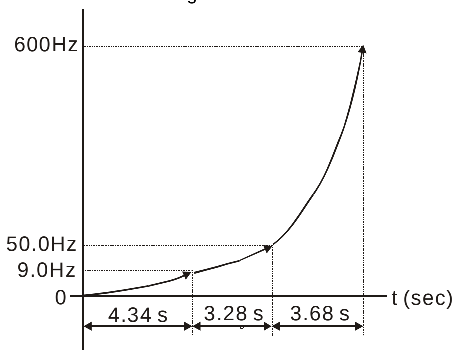
02.07	Up/Down Mode	

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	By digital keypad up/down keys mode
	1	Based on Accel/Decel Time acc. to Pr.01.09 to 01.12
	2	Constant speed (acc. to Pr. 02.08)
	3	Pulse input unit (acc. to Pr. 02.08)

02.08	Accel/Decel Rate of Change of UP/DOWN Operation with Constant Speed	Unit: 0.01
Settings	0.01~10.00 Hz/2ms	Factory Setting: 0.01

- These parameters determine the increase/decrease of the master frequency when operated via the Multi-function Inputs when Pr.04.05~Pr.04.08 are set to 10 (Up command) or 11 (Down command).
- When Pr.02.07 is set to 0: increase/decrease the frequency by using UP/DOWN key. It is valid only when the AC motor drive is running.



📖 When Pr.02.07 is set to 1: increase/decrease the frequency by acceleration/deceleration settings. It is valid only when the AC motor drive is running.

📖 When Pr.02.07 is set to 2: increase/decrease the frequency by Pr.02.08.

📖 When Pr.02.07 is set to 3: increase/decrease the frequency by Pr.02.08 (unit: pulse input).

02.11	⚡Keypad Frequency Command		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 60.00

📖 This parameter can be used to set frequency command or read keypad frequency command.

02.12	⚡Communication Frequency Command		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 60.00

📖 This parameter can be used to set frequency command or read communication frequency command.

02.13	The Selections for Saving Keypad or Communication Frequency Command		
			Factory Setting: 0
	Settings	0	Save Keypad & Communication Frequency
		1	Save Keypad Frequency only
		2	Save Communication Frequency only

📖 This parameter is used to save keypad or RS-485 frequency command.

02.14	Initial Frequency Selection (for keypad & RS485/USB)		
			Factory Setting: 0
	Settings	0	By Current Freq Command
		1	By Zero Freq Command
		2	By Frequency Display at Stop

02.15	Initial Frequency Setpoint (for keypad & RS485/USB)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.00 ~ 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 60.00

📖 These parameters are used to determinate the frequency at stop:

When setting Pr.02.14 to 0: the initial frequency will be current frequency.

When setting Pr.02.14 to 1: the initial frequency will be 0.

When setting Pr.02.14 to 2: the initial frequency will be Pr.02.15.

02.16 Display the Master Freq Command Source

Settings Read Only Factory setting: ##

📖 You can read the master frequency command source by this parameter.

Display Value	Bit	Function
1	Bit0=1	Master Freq Command Source by First Freq Source (Pr.02.00).
2	Bit1=1	Master Freq Command Source by Second Freq Source (Pr.02.09).
4	Bit2=1	Master Freq Command Source by Multi-input function
8	Bit3=1	Master Freq Command Source by PLC Freq command

02.17 Display the Operation Command Source

Settings Read Only Factory setting: ##

📖 You can read the operation source by this parameter.

Display Value	**Bit**	**Function**
1	Bit0=1	Operation Command Source by Digital Keypad
2	Bit1=1	Operation Command Source by RS485 communication
4	Bit2=1	Operation Command Source by External Terminal
8	Bit3=1	Operation Command Source by Multi-input function
16	Bit4=1	Operation Command Source by PLC Operation Command

Group 3: Output Function Parameters

03.00	Multi-function Output Relay (RA1, RB1, RC1)

Factory Setting: 8

03.01	Multi-function Output Terminal MO1

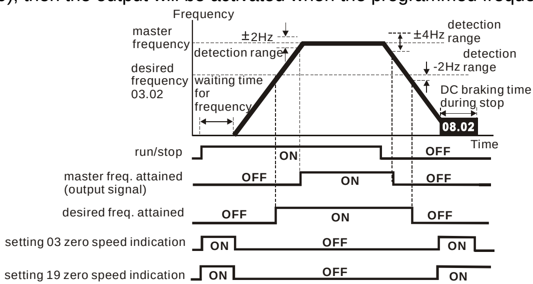
Factory Setting: 1

Settings	Function	Description
0	No Function	
1	AC Drive Operational	Active when the drive is ready or RUN command is “ON”.
2	Master Frequency Attained	Active when the AC motor drive reaches the output frequency setting.
3	Zero Speed	Active when Command Frequency is lower than the Minimum Output Frequency.
4	Over-Torque Detection	Active as long as over-torque is detected. (Refer to Pr.06.03 ~ Pr.06.05)
5	Baseblock (B.B.) Indication	Active when the output of the AC motor drive is shut off during baseblock. Base block can be forced by Multi-function input (setting 09).
6	Low-Voltage Indication	Active when low voltage(Lv) is detected.
7	Operation Mode Indication	Active when operation command is controlled by external terminal.
8	Fault Indication	Active when a fault occurs (oc, ov, oH, oL, oL1, EF, cF3, HPF, ocA, ocd, ocn, GFF).
9	Desired Frequency Attained	Active when the desired frequency (Pr.03.02) is attained.
10	Terminal Count Value Attained	Active when the counter reaches Terminal Count Value.
11	Preliminary Count Value Attained	Active when the counter reaches Preliminary Count Value.
12	Over Voltage Stall supervision	Active when the Over Voltage Stall function operating

Settings	Function	Description
13	Over Current Stall supervision	Active when the Over Current Stall function operating
14	Heat Sink Overheat Warning	When heatsink overheats, it will signal to prevent OH turn off the drive. When it is higher than 85°C (185°F), it will be ON.
15	Over Voltage supervision	Active when the DC-BUS voltage exceeds level
16	PID supervision	Active when the PID feedback signal is abnormal (Refer to Pr.10.12 and Pr.13.)
17	Forward command	Active when the direction command is FWD
18	Reverse command	Active when the direction command is REV
19	Zero Speed Output Signal	Active when the drive is standby or stop
20	Communication Warning (FbE,Cexx, AoL2, AUE, SAvE)	Active when there is a Communication Warning
21	Brake Control (Desired Frequency Attained)	Active when output frequency ≥Pr.03.11. Deactivated when output frequency ≤Pr.03.12 after STOP command.

03.02	Desired Frequency Attained	Unit: 0.01
	Settings 0.00 to 600.0 Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00

📖 If a multi-function output terminal is set to function as Desired Frequency Attained (Pr.03.00 to Pr.03.01=09), then the output will be activated when the programmed frequency is attained.



output timing chart of multiple function terminals when setting to frequency attained or zero speed indication

03.03	✗Analog Output Signal (AFM)	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Analog Frequency Meter (0 to Maximum Output Frequency)
	1	Analog Current Meter (0 to 250% of rated AC motor drive current)

- This parameter sets the function of the AFM output 0~+10VDC (ACM is common).

03.04	✗Analog Output Gain	Unit: 1
Settings	1 to 200%	Factory Setting: 100

- This parameter sets the voltage range of the analog output signal AFM.
- When Pr.03.03 is set to 0, the analog output voltage is directly proportional to the output frequency of the AC motor drive. With Pr.03.04 set to 100%, the Maximum Output Frequency (Pr.01.00) of the AC motor drive corresponds to +10VDC on the AFM output.
- Similarly, if Pr.03.03 is set to 1, the analog output voltage is directly proportional to the output current of the AC drive. With Pr.03.04 set to 100%, then 2.5 times the rated current corresponds to +10VDC on the AFM output.

NOTE

Any type of voltmeter can be used. If the meter reads full scale at a voltage less than 10V, Pr. 03.04 should be set using the following formula:

Pr. 03.04 = ((meter full scale voltage)/10) x 100%

For Example: When using the meter with full scale of 5 volts, adjust Pr.03.04 to 50%. If Pr.03.03 is set to 0, then 5VDC will correspond to Maximum Output Frequency.

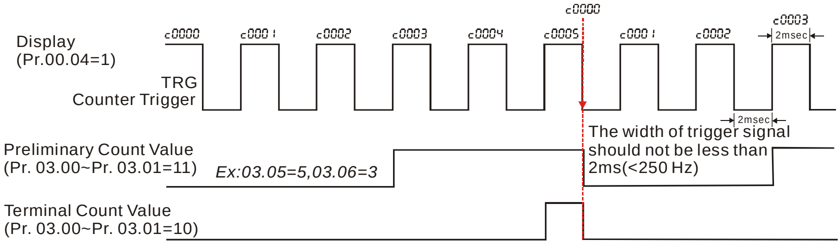
03.05	Terminal Count Value	Unit: 1
Settings	0 to 9999	Factory Setting: 0

- This parameter sets the count value of the internal counter. To increase the internal counter, one of Pr.04.05 to 04.08 should be set to 12. Upon completion of counting, the specified output terminal will be activated. (Pr.03.00 to Pr.03.01 set to 10).
- When the display shows c555, the drive has counted 555 times. If display shows c555•, it means that real counter value is between 5,550 and 5,559.

03.06	Preliminary Count Value	Unit: 1
Settings	0 to 9999	Factory Setting: 0

📖 When the counter value reaches this value, the corresponding multi-function output terminal will be activated, provided one of Pr.03.00 to Pr.03.01 set to 11 (Preliminary Count Value Setting). This multi-function output terminal will be deactivated upon completion of Terminal Count Value Attained.

📖 The timing diagram:



03.07	EF Active when Terminal Count Value Attained

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Terminal count value attained, no EF display
	1	Terminal count value attained, EF active

📖 If this parameter is set to 1 and the desired value of counter is attained, the AC drive will treat it as a fault. The drive will stop and show the "EF" message on the display.

03.08	Fan Control

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Fan always ON
	1	1 minute after AC motor drive stops, fan will be OFF
	2	Fan ON when AC motor drive runs, fan OFF when AC motor drive stops
	3	Fan ON when preliminary heatsink temperature attained

📖 This parameter determines the operation mode of the cooling fan.

03.09	The Digital Output Used by PLC

Settings Read Only Factory setting: ##

Bit0=1: RLY used by PLC

Bit1=1: MO1 used by PLC

Bit2=1: MO2/RA2 used by PLC

Bit3=1: MO3/RA3 used by PLC

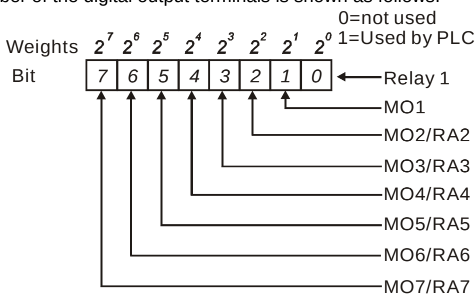
Bit4=1: MO4/RA4 used by PLC

Bit5=1: MO5/RA5 used by PLC

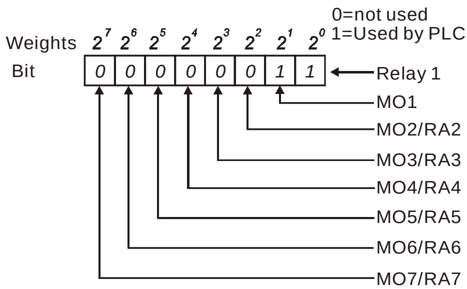
Bit6=1: MO6/RA6 used by PLC

Bit7=1: MO7/RA7 used by PLC

- The equivalent 8-bit is used to display the status (used or not used) of each digital output. The value that Pr.03.09 displays is the result after converting 8-bit binary into decimal value.
- For standard AC motor drive, it only has 2-bit (bit0 and bit1). When extension card is installed, the number of the digital output terminals will increase according to the extension card. The maximum number of the digital output terminals is shown as follows.

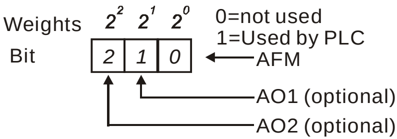


- For example: when Pr.03.09 is set to 3 (decimal) = 00000011 (binary) that indicates Relay1 and MO1 are used by PLC. (Pr.03.09= $2^0+2^1=3$)



03.10	The Analog Output Used by PLC	
	Settings: Read Only Bit0=1: AFM used by PLC Bit1=1: AO1 used by PLC Bit2=1: AO2 used by PLC	Factory setting: ##

📖 The equivalent 1-bit is used to display the status (used or not used) of each analog output. The value that Pr.03.10 displays is the result after converting 1-bit binary into decimal value.



📖 For Example:

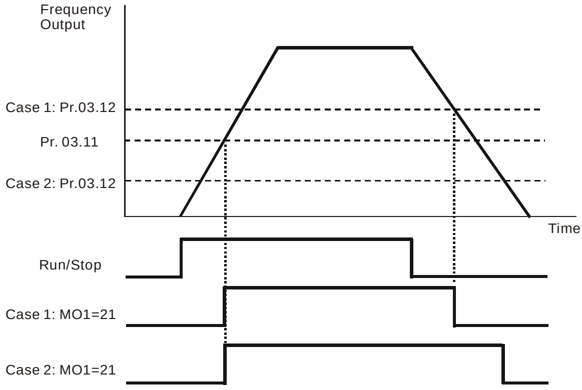
If Pr.03.10 displays 1, it means that AFM is used by PLC.

03.11	Brake Release Frequency	Unit: 0.01
	Settings: 0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00
03.12	Brake Engage Frequency	Unit: 0.01
	Settings: 0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00

📖 These two parameters are used to set control of mechanical brake via the output terminals (Relay or MO1) when Pr.03.00~03.01 is set to 21. Refer to the following example for details.

Example:

1. Case 1: Pr.03.12 ≥ Pr.03.11
2. Case 2: Pr.03.12 ≤ Pr.03.11



Note: MO1: setting value of Pr.03.01

03.13	Display the Status of Multi-function Output Terminals

Settings Read Only Factory setting: ##

Bit0: RLY Status

Bit1: MO1 Status

Bit2: MO2/RA2 Status

Bit3: MO3/RA3 Status

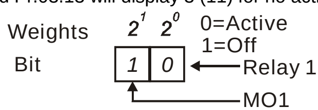
Bit4: MO4/RA4 Status

Bit5: MO5/RA5 Status

Bit6: MO6/RA6 Status

Bit7: MO7/RA7 Status

📖 For standard AC motor drive (without extension card), the multi-function output terminals are falling-edge triggered and Pr.03.13 will display 3 (11) for no action.

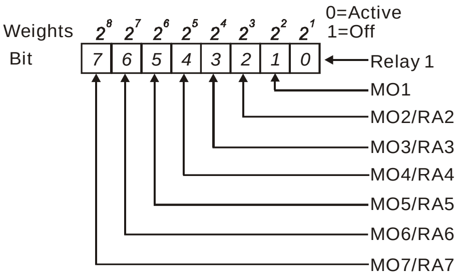


📖 For Example:

If Pr.03.13 displays 2, it means Relay 1 is active.

The display value 2 =bit 1 X 2^1

📖 When extension card is installed, the number of the multi-function output terminals will increase according to the extension card. The maximum number of the multi-function output terminals is shown as follows.



Group 4: Input Function Parameters

04.00	Keypad Potentiometer Bias		Unit: 0. 1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0

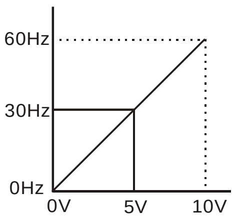
04.01	Keypad Potentiometer Bias Polarity		
			Factory Setting: 0
	Settings	0	Positive Bias
		1	Negative Bias

04.02	Keypad Potentiometer Gain		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.1 to 200.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0

04.03	Keypad Potentiometer Negative Bias, Reverse Motion Enable/Disable		
			Factory Setting: 0
	Settings	0	No Negative Bias Command
		1	Negative Bias: REV Motion Enabled

Example 1: Standard application

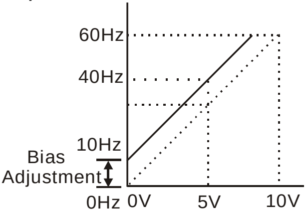
This is the most used setting. The user only needs to set Pr.02.00 to 04. The frequency command comes from keypad potentiometer.



Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq. Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =0%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =0--Positive bias
Pr.04.02 =100%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =0--No negative bias command

Example 2: Use of bias

This example shows the influence of changing the bias. When the input is 0V the output frequency is 10 Hz. At mid-point a potentiometer will give 40 Hz. Once the Maximum Output Frequency is reached, any further increase of the potentiometer or signal will not increase the output frequency. (To use the full potentiometer range, please refer to Example 3.) The value of external input voltage/current 0-8.33V corresponds to the setting frequency 10-60Hz.



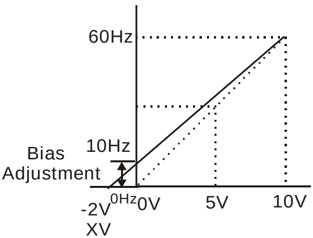
Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq.
Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =16.7%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =0--Positive bias
Pr.04.02 =100%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =0--No negative bias command

Gain:100%

Bias adjustment:((10Hz/60Hz)/(Gain/100%))*100%=16.7%

Example 3: Use of bias and gain for use of full range

This example also shows a popular method. The whole scale of the potentiometer can be used as desired. In addition to signals of 0 to 10V, the popular voltage signals also include signals of 0 to 5V, or any value under 10V. Regarding the setting, please refer to the following examples.



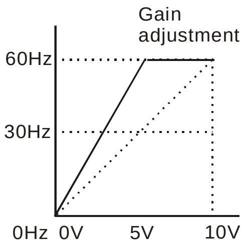
Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq.
Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =20.0%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =0--Positive bias
Pr.04.02 =83.3%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =0--No negative bias command

Gain:(10V/(10V+2V))*100%=83.3%

Bias adjustment:((10Hz/60Hz)/(Gain/100%))*100%=20.0%

Example 4: Use of 0-5V potentiometer range via gain adjustment

This example shows a potentiometer range of 0 to 5 Volts. Instead of adjusting gain as example below, you can set Pr. 01.00 to 120Hz to achieve the same results.

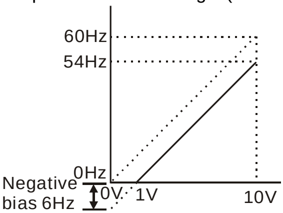


Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq.
Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =0.0%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =0--Positive bias
Pr.04.02 =200%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =0--No negative bias command

Gain:(10V/5V)*100%=200%

Example 5: Use of negative bias in noisy environment

In this example, a 1V negative bias is used. In noisy environments it is advantageous to use negative bias to provide a noise margin (1V in this example).



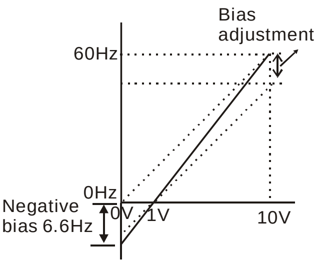
Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq.
Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =10.0%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =1--Negative bias
Pr.04.02 =100%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =0--No negative bias command

Gain:100%

Bias adjustment:((6Hz/60Hz)/(Gain/100%))*100%=10.0%

Example 6: Use of negative bias in noisy environment and gain adjustment to use full potentiometer range

In this example, a negative bias is used to provide a noise margin. Also a potentiometer frequency gain is used to allow the Maximum Output Frequency to be reached.



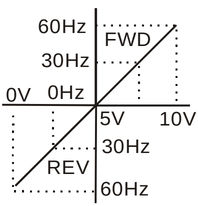
Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq.
Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =10.0%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =1--Negative bias
Pr.04.02 =111%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =0--No negative bias command

Gain:(10V/9V)*100%=111%

Bias adjustment:((6.6Hz/60Hz)/(Gain/100%))*100%=10.0%

Example 7: Use of 0-10V potentiometer signal to run motor in FWD and REV direction

In this example, the input is programmed to run a motor in both forward and reverse direction. The motor will be idle when the potentiometer position is at mid-point of its scale. Using the settings in this example disables the external FWD and REV controls.



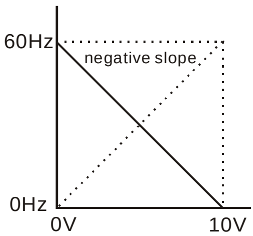
Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq.
Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =50.0%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =1--Negative bias
Pr.04.02 =200%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =1--Negative bias: REV motion enabled

Gain:(10V/5V)*100%=200%

Bias adjustment:((60Hz/60Hz)/(Gain/100%))*100%=200%

Example 8: Use negative slope

In this example, the use of negative slope is shown. Negative slopes are used in applications for control of pressure, temperature or flow. The sensor that is connected to the input generates a large signal (10V) at high pressure or flow. With negative slope settings, the AC motor drive will slow stop the motor. With these settings the AC motor drive will always run in only one direction (reverse). This can only be changed by exchanging 2 wires to the motor.



Pr.01.00=60Hz--Max. output Freq.
Potentiometer
Pr.04.00 =100%--Bias adjustment
Pr.04.01 =0--Positive bias
Pr.04.02 =100%--Input gain
Pr.04.03 =1--Negative bias: REV motion enabled

Gain:(10V/10V)*100%=100%

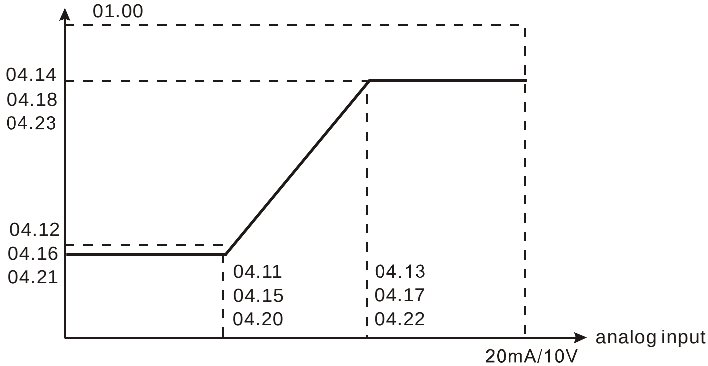
Bias adjustment:((60Hz/60Hz)/(Gain/100%))*100%=100%

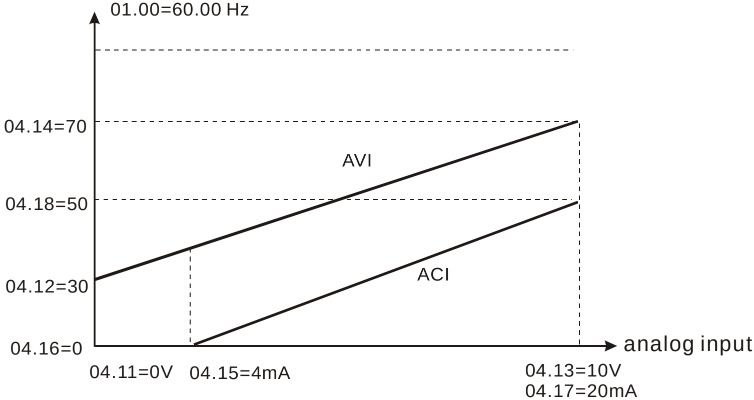
04.11	Minimum AVI Voltage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 0.0
04.12	Minimum AVI Frequency (percentage of Pr.01.00)		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0
04.13	Maximum AVI Voltage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 10.0
04.14	Maximum AVI Frequency (percentage of Pr. 01.00)		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0
04.15	Minimum ACI Current		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 20.0mA	Factory Setting: 4.0
04.16	Minimum ACI Frequency (percentage of Pr. 01.00)		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0

04.17	Maximum ACI Current		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.0 to 20.0mA	Factory Setting: 20.0
04.18	Maximum ACI Frequency (percentage of Pr. 01.00)		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0
04.19	ACI Terminal Mode Selection		
			Factory Setting: 0
	Settings	0 ACI	
		1 AVI2	

04.20	Minimum AVI2 Voltage	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 0.0
04.21	Minimum AVI2 Frequency (percentage of Pr.1-00)	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0
04.22	Maximum AVI2 Voltage	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 10.0
04.23	Maximum AVI2 Frequency (percentage of Pr.1-00)	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0

- Please note the ACI/AVI switch on the AC motor drive. Switch to ACI for 4 to 20mA analog current signal (ACI) (Pr.04.19 should be set to 0) and AVI for analog voltage signal (AVI2) (Pr.04.19 should be set to 1).
- The above parameters are used to set the analog input reference values. The min and max frequencies are based on Pr.01.00 (during open-loop control) as shown in the following.



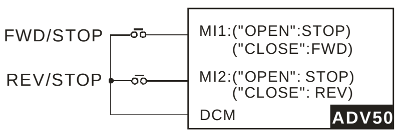
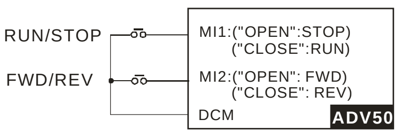


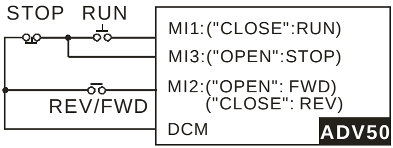
04.04	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI1, MI2) 2-wire/ 3-wire Operation Control Modes

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	2-wire: FWD/STOP, REV/STOP
	1	2-wire: FWD/REV, RUN/STOP
	2	3-wire Operation

📖 There are three different types of control modes:

	04.04	External Terminal
0	2-wire FWD /STOP REV / STOP	
1	2-wire FWD/ REV RUN / STOP	

04.04		External Terminal
2	3-wire	

04.05 Multi-function Input Terminal (MI3)

Factory Setting: 1

04.06 Multi-function Input Terminal (MI4)

Factory Setting: 2

04.07 Multi-function Input Terminal (MI5)

Factory Setting: 3

04.08 Multi-function Input Terminal (MI6)

Factory Setting: 4

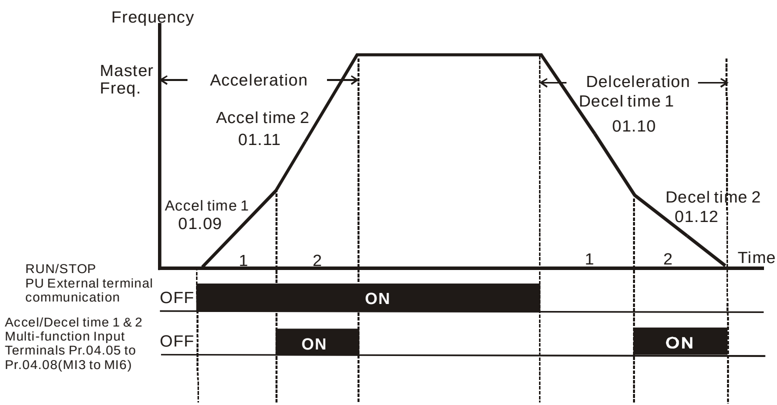
Settings	Function	Description
0	No Function	Any unused terminals should be programmed to 0 to insure they have no effect on operation.
1	Multi-Step Speed Command 1	These four inputs select the multi-speed defined by Pr.05.00 to Pr.05.14 as shown in the diagram at the end of this table. **NOTE: Pr.05.00 to Pr.05.14 can also be used to control output speed by programming the AC motor drive’s internal PLC function. There are 17 step speed frequencies (including Master Frequency and Jog Frequency) to select for application.**
2	Multi-Step Speed Command 2	
3	Multi-Step Speed Command 3	
4	Multi-Step Speed Command 4	
5	External Reset	The External Reset has the same function as the Reset key on the Digital keypad. After faults such as O.H., O.C. and O.V. are cleared this input can be used to reset the drive.

Settings	Function	Description
6	Accel/Decel Inhibit	When the command is active, acceleration and deceleration is stopped and the AC motor drive maintains a constant speed.
7	Accel/Decel Time Selection Command	Used to select the one of 2 Accel/Decel Times (Pr.01.09 to Pr.01.12). See explanation at the end of this table.
8	Jog Operation Control	Parameter value 08 programs one of the Multi-function Input Terminals MI3 ~ MI6 (Pr.04.05~Pr.04.08) for Jog control. **NOTE: Programming for Jog operation by 08 can only be done while the motor is stopped. (Refer to parameter Pr.01.13~Pr.01.15)**
9	External Base Block (Refer to Pr. 08.06)	Parameter value 09 programs a Multi-function Input Terminals for external Base Block control. **NOTE: When a Base-Block signal is received, the AC motor drive will block all output and the motor will free run. When base block control is deactivated, the AC drive will start its speed search function and synchronize with the motor speed, and then accelerate to Master Frequency.**
10	UP: Increase Master Frequency	Increase/decrease the Master Frequency each time an input is received or continuously when the input stays active. When both inputs are active at the same time, the Master Frequency increase/decrease is halted. Please refer to Pr.02.07, 02.08. This function is also called “motor potentiometer”.
11	DOWN: Decrease Master Frequency	
12	Counter Trigger	Parameter value 12 programs one of the Multi-function Input Terminals MI3~MI6 (Pr.04.05~Pr.04.08) to increment the AC drive’s internal counter. When an input is received, the counter is incremented by 1.
13	Counter Reset	When active, the counter is reset and inhibited. To enable counting the input should be OFF. Refer to Pr.03.05 and 03.06.
14	External Fault	Parameter value 14 programs one of the Multi-function Input Terminals MI3~MI6 (Pr.04.05~Pr.04.08) to be External Fault (E.F.) inputs.

Settings	Function	Description
15	PID function disabled	When an input ON with this setting is ON, the PID function will be disabled.
16	Output Shutoff Stop	AC motor drive will stop output and the motor free run if one of these settings is enabled. If the status of terminal is changed, AC motor drive will restart from 0Hz.
17	Parameter lock enable	When this setting is enabled, all parameters will be locked and write parameters is disabled.
18	Operation Command Selection (Pr.02.01 setting/external terminals)	ON: Operation command via Ext. Terminals OFF: Operation command via Pr.02.01 setting When the settings 18, 19 and 20 are ON at the same time, the priority should be setting 18 > setting19 > setting20.
19	Operation Command Selection (Pr 02.01 setting/Digital Keypad)	ON: Operation command via Digital Keypad OFF: Operation command via Pr.02.01 setting When the settings 18, 19 and 20 are ON at the same time, the priority should be setting 18 > setting19 > setting20.
20	Operation Command Selection (Pr 02.01 setting/ Communication)	ON: Operation command via Communication OFF: Operation command via Pr.02.01 setting When the settings 18, 19 and 20 are ON at the same time, the priority should be setting 18 > setting19 > setting20.
21	Forward/Reverse	This function has top priority to set the direction for running (If "Pr.02.04=0")
22	Source of second frequency command enabled	Used to select the first/second frequency command source. Refer to Pr.02.00 and 02.09. ON: 2nd Frequency command source OFF: 1st Frequency command source

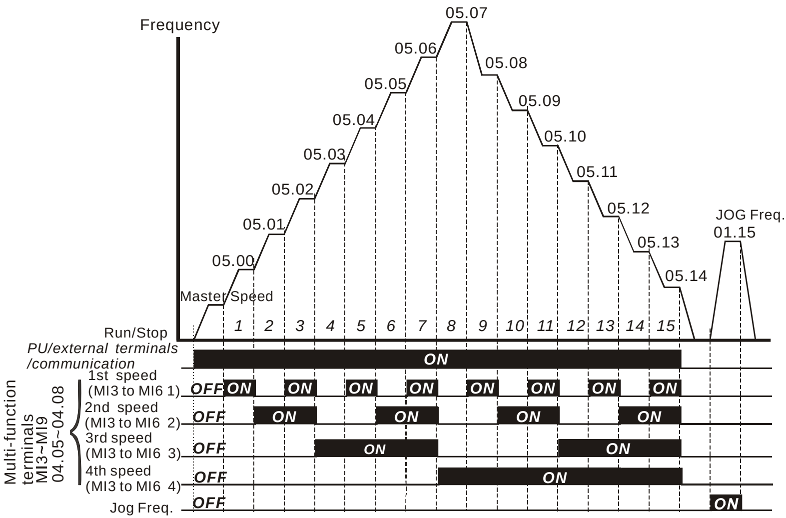
Settings	Function	Description
23	Run/Stop PLC Program (PLC1)	ON: Run PLC Program OFF: Stop PLC Program When AC motor drive is in STOP mode and this function is enabled, it will display PLC1 in the PLC page and execute PLC program. When this function is disabled, it will display PLC0 in the PLC page and stop executing PLC program. The motor will be stopped by Pr.02.02. When operation command source is external terminal, the keypad cannot be used to change PLC status. And this function will be invalid when the AC Motor drive is in PLC2 status.
24	Download/Execute/ Monitor PLC Program (PLC2)	When AC motor drive is in STOP mode and this function is enabled, it will display PLC2 in the PLC page and you can download/execute/monitor PLC. When this function is disabled, it will display PLC0 in the PLC page and stop executing PLC program. The motor will be stopped by Pr.02.02. When operation command source is external terminal, the keypad cannot be used to change PLC status. And this function will be invalid when the AC Motor drive is in PLC1 status.

📖 Accel/Decel Time Selection



Accel/Decel Time and Multi-function Input Terminals

Multi-Step Speed

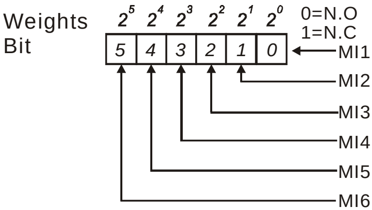


Multi-speed via External Terminals

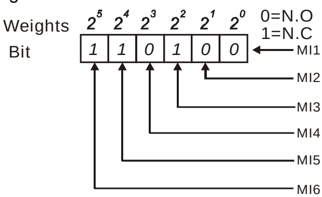
	MI6=4	MI5=3	MI4=2	MI3=1
Master frequency	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
1st speed	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON
2nd speed	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
3rd speed	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
4th speed	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
5th speed	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
6th speed	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
7th speed	OFF	ON	ON	ON
8th speed	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
9th speed	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
10th speed	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
11th speed	ON	OFF	ON	ON
12th speed	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
13th speed	ON	ON	OFF	ON
14th speed	ON	ON	ON	OFF
15th speed	ON	ON	ON	ON

04.09	Multi-function Input Contact Selection	Unit: 1
	Settings 0 to 4095	Factory Setting: 0

- This parameter can be used to set the status of multi-function terminals (MI1~MI6 (N.O./N.C.) for standard AC motor drive).
- The MI1~MI3 setting will be invalid when the operation command source is external terminal (2/3wire).



- The Setting method: It needs to convert binary number (6-bit) to decimal number for input.
- For example: if setting MI3, MI5, MI6 to be N.C. and MI1, MI2, MI4 to be N.O. The setting value Pr.04.09 should be bit5X2^5+bit4X2^4+bit2X2^2= 1X2^5+1X2^4+1X2^2= 32+16+4=52 as shown in the following.

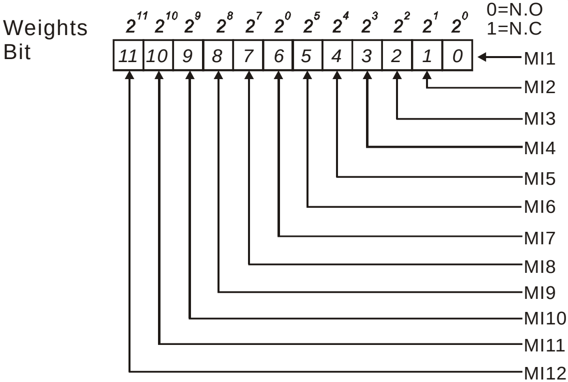


The setting value
= bit5x2^5+bit4x2^4+bit2x2^2
= 1x2^5+1x2^4+1x2^2
=32+16+4 =52
Setting 04.09

NOTE:

2^{14}=16384	2^{13}=8192	2^{12}=4096	2^{11}=2048	2^{10}=1024
2^9=512	2^8=256	2^7=128	2^6=64	2^5=32
2^4=16	2^3=8	2^2=4	2^1=2	2^0=1

- When extension card is installed, the number of the multi-function input terminals will increase according to the extension card. The maximum number of the multi-function input terminals is shown as follows.



04.10	Digital Terminal Input Debouncing Time	Unit: 2ms
	Settings 1 to 20	Factory Setting: 1

📖 This parameter is to delay the signals on digital input terminals. 1 unit is 2 msec, 2 units are 4 msec, etc. The delay time is to debounce noisy signals that could cause the digital terminals to malfunction.

04.24	The Digital Input Used by PLC	
	Settings Read Only	Factory setting: ##

Display Bit0=1: MI1 used by PLC

Bit1=1: MI2 used by PLC

Bit2=1: MI3 used by PLC

Bit3=1: MI4 used by PLC

Bit4=1: MI5 used by PLC

Bit5=1: MI6 used by PLC

Bit6=1: MI7 used by PLC

Bit7=1: MI8 used by PLC

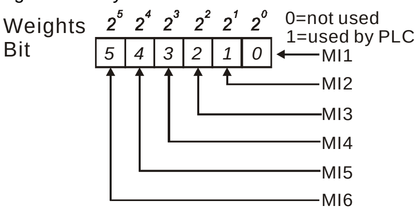
Bit8=1: MI9 used by PLC

Bit9=1: MI10 used by PLC

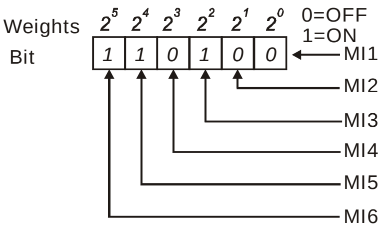
Bit10=1: MI11 used by PLC

Bit11=1: MI12 used by PLC

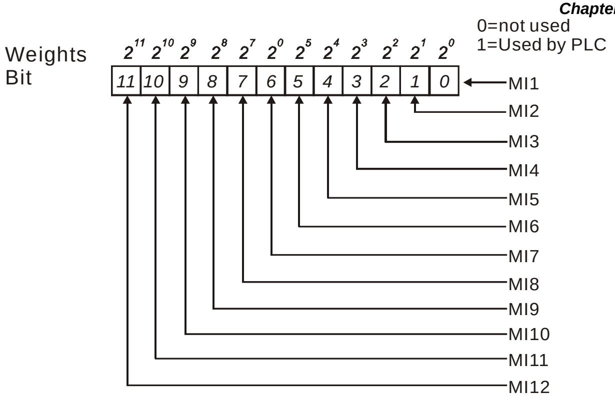
📖 For standard AC motor drive (without extension card), the equivalent 6-bit is used to display the status (used or not used) of each digital input. The value for Pr.04.24 to display is the result after converting 6-bit binary into decimal value.



📖 For example: when Pr.04.24 is set to 52 (decimal) = 110100 (binary) that indicates MI3, MI5 and MI6 are used by PLC.

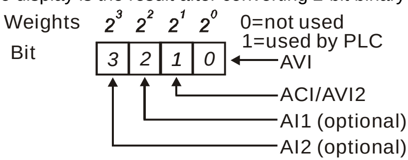


📖 When extension card is installed, the number of the digital input terminals will increase according to the extension card. The maximum number of the digital input terminals is shown as follows.



04.25	The Analog Input Used by PLC	
Settings	Read Only	Factory setting: ##
Display	Bit0=1: AVI used by PLC	
	Bit1=1: ACI/AVI2 used by PLC	
	Bit2=1: AI1 used by PLC	
	Bit3=1: AI2 used by PLC	

📖 The equivalent 2-bit is used to display the status(used or not used) of each analog input. The value for Pr.04.25 to display is the result after converting 2-bit binary into decimal value.



04.26	Display the Status of Multi-function Input Terminal	
Settings	Read Only	Factory setting: ##
Display	Bit0: MI1 Status	
	Bit1: MI2 Status	

Bit2: MI3 Status

Bit3: MI4 Status

Bit4: MI5 Status

Bit5: MI6 Status

Bit6: MI7 Status

Bit7: MI8 Status

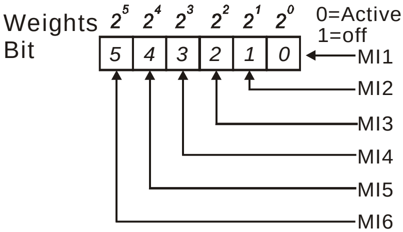
Bit8: MI9 Status

Bit9: MI10 Status

Bit10: MI11 Status

Bit11: MI12 Status

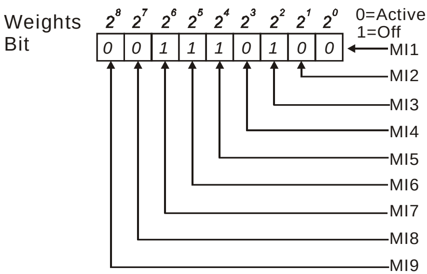
📖 The multi-function input terminals are falling-edge triggered. For standard AC motor drive (without extension card), there are MI1 to MI6 and Pr.04.26 will display 63 (111111) for no action.



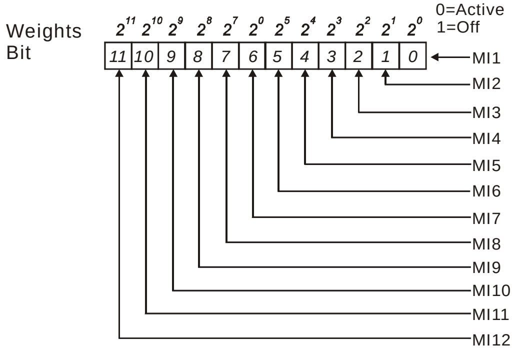
📖 For Example:

If Pr.04.26 displays 52, it means MI1, MI2 and MI4 are active.

The display value 52= 32+16+4 =1 X 2^5+ 1X 2^4 + 1X 2^2 = bit 6 X 2^5+ bit 5 X 2^4 + bit 3 X 2^2



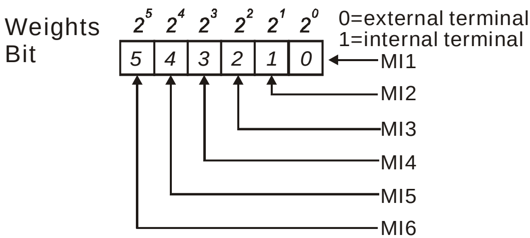
📖 When extension card is installed, the number of the multi-function input terminals will increase according to the extension card. The maximum number of the multi-function input terminals is shown as follows.



04.27	✓Internal/External Multi-function Input Terminals Selection	Unit: 1
Settings	0 to 4095	Factory Setting: 0

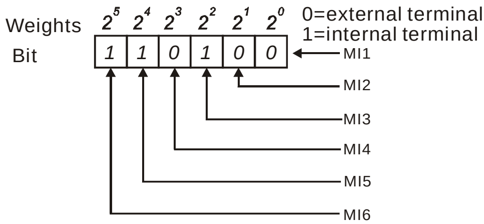
📖 This parameter is used to select the terminals to be internal terminal or external terminal. You can activate internal terminals by Pr.04.28. A terminal cannot be both internal terminal and external terminal at the same time.

📖 For standard AC motor drive (without extension card), the multi-function input terminals are MI1 to MI6 as shown in the following.

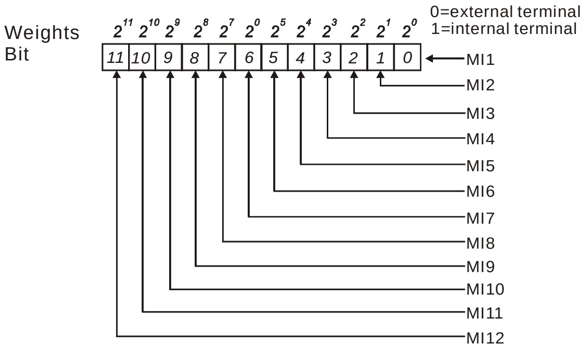


📖 The Setting method is convert binary number to decimal number for input.

📖 For example: if setting MI3, MI5, MI6 to be internal terminals and MI1, MI2, MI4 to be external terminals. The setting value should be bit5X2^5+bit4X2^4+bit2X2^2= 1X2^5+1X2^4+1X2^2= 32+16+4=52 as shown in the following.



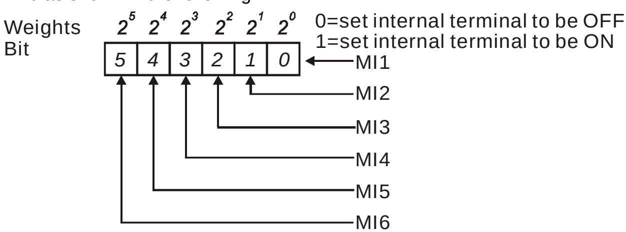
📖 When extension card is installed, the number of the multi-function input terminals will increase according to the extension card. The maximum number of the multi-function input terminals is shown as follows.



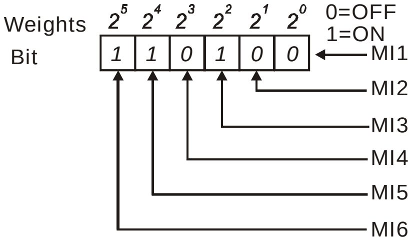
04.28	⚡Internal Terminal Status		Unit: 1
	Settings	0 to 4095	Factory Setting: 0

📖 This parameter is used to set the internal terminal action via keypad, communication or PLC.

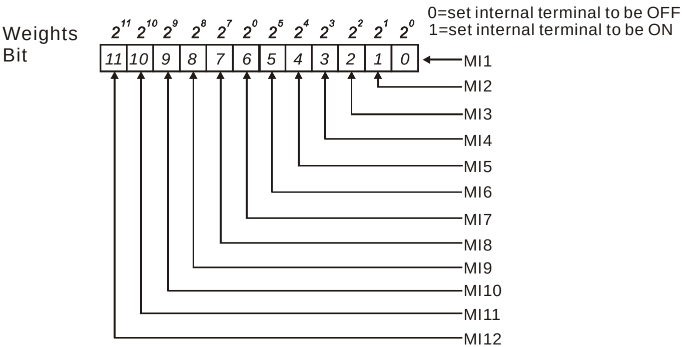
📖 For standard AC motor drive (without extension card), the multi-function input terminals are MI1 to MI6 as shown in the following.



📖 For example, if setting MI3, MI5 and MI6 to be ON, Pr.04.28 should be set to bit5X2^5+bit4X2^4+bit2X2^2= 1X2^5+1X2^4+1X2^2= 32+16+4=52 as shown in the following.



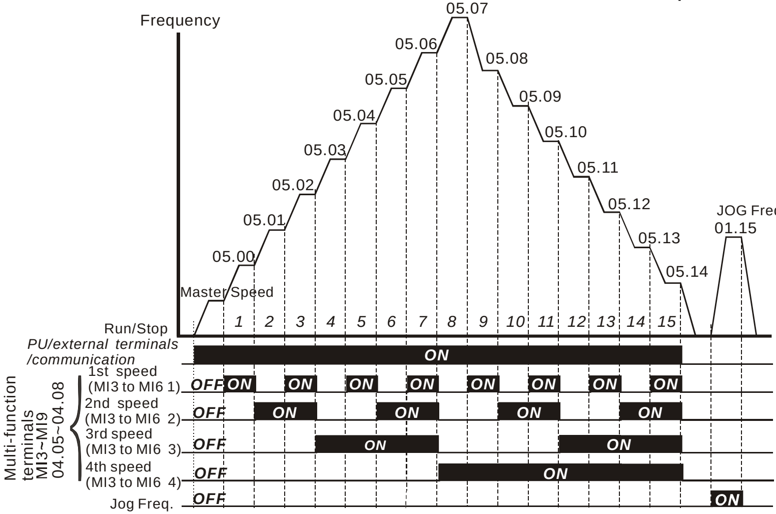
📖 When extension card is installed, the number of the multi-function input terminals will increase according to the extension card. The maximum number of the multi-function input terminals is shown as follows.



Group 5: Multi-step Speeds Parameters

05.00	✓1st Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.01	✓2nd Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.02	✓3rd Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.03	✓4th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.04	✓5th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.05	✓6th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.06	✓7th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.07	✓8th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.08	✓9th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.09	✓10th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.10	✓11th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.11	✓12th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.12	✓13th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.13	✓14th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
05.14	✓15th Step Speed Frequency	Unit: 0.01
Settings	0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00

📖 The Multi-function Input Terminals (refer to Pr.04.05 to 04.08) are used to select one of the AC motor drive Multi-step speeds. The speeds (frequencies) are determined by Pr.05.00 to 05.14 as shown in the following.



Multi-speed via External Terminals

	MI6=4	MI5=3	MI4=2	MI3=1
Master frequency	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
1st speed	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON
2nd speed	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
3rd speed	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
4th speed	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
5th speed	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
6th speed	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
7th speed	OFF	ON	ON	ON
8th speed	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
9th speed	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
10th speed	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
11th speed	ON	OFF	ON	ON
12th speed	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
13th speed	ON	ON	OFF	ON
14th speed	ON	ON	ON	OFF
15th speed	ON	ON	ON	ON

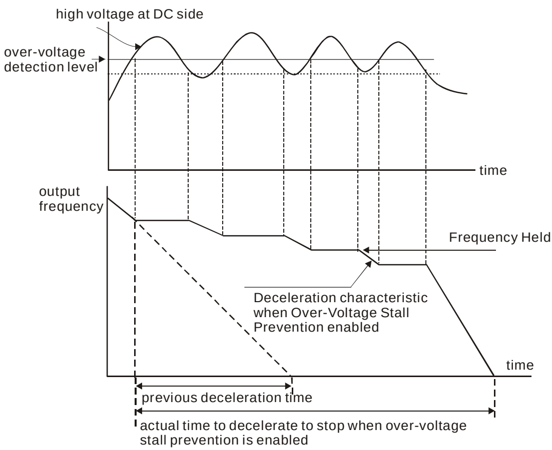
Group 6: Protection Parameters

06.00	Over-Voltage Stall Prevention			Unit: 0.1
	Settings	230V series	330.0 to 410.0V	Factory Setting: 390.0
		460V series	660.0 to 820.0V	Factory Setting: 780.0
		0	Disable Over-voltage Stall Prevention (with brake unit or brake resistor)	

- During deceleration, the DC bus voltage may exceed its Maximum Allowable Value due to motor regeneration. When this function is enabled, the AC motor drive will not decelerate further and keep the output frequency constant until the voltage drops below the preset value again.
- Over-Voltage Stall Prevention must be disabled (Pr.06.00=0) when a brake unit or brake resistor is used.

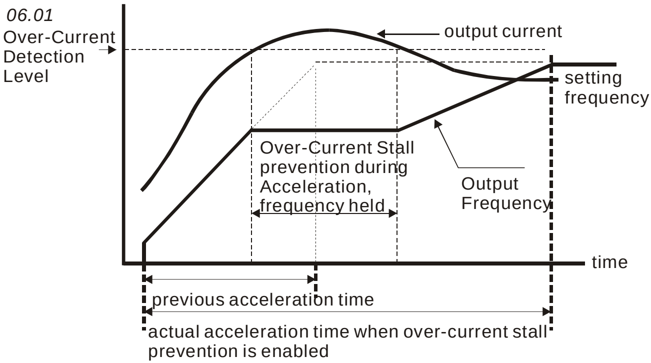
NOTE

With moderate inertia load, over-voltage stall prevention will not occur and the real deceleration time will be equal to the setting of deceleration time. The AC drive will automatically extend the deceleration time with high inertia loads. If the deceleration time is critical for the application, a brake resistor or brake unit should be used.



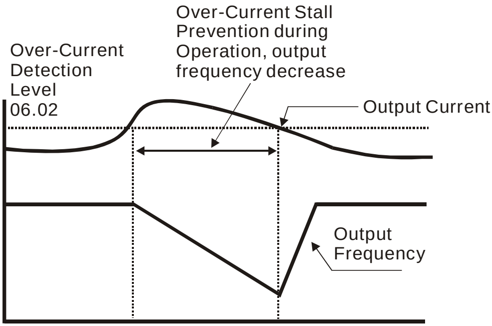
06.01	Over-Current Stall Prevention during Acceleration	Unit: 1
Settings	20 to 250%	Factory Setting: 170
	0: disable	

- A setting of 100% is equal to the Rated Output Current of the drive.
- During acceleration, the AC drive output current may increase abruptly and exceed the value specified by Pr.06.01 due to rapid acceleration or excessive load on the motor. When this function is enabled, the AC drive will stop accelerating and keep the output frequency constant until the current drops below the maximum value.



06.02	Over-current Stall Prevention during Operation	Unit: 1
Settings	20 to 250%	Factory Setting: 170
	0: disable	

- If the output current exceeds the setting specified in Pr.06.02 when the drive is operating, the drive will decrease its output frequency to prevent the motor stall. If the output current is lower than the setting specified in Pr.06.02, the drive will accelerate again to catch up with the set frequency command value.



over-current stall prevention during operation

06.03	Over-Torque Detection Mode (OL2)

Factory Setting: 0

Settings		
	0	Over-Torque detection disabled.
	1	Over-Torque detection enabled during constant speed operation. After over-torque is detected, keep running until OL1 or OL occurs.
	2	Over-Torque detection enabled during constant speed operation. After over-torque is detected, stop running.
	3	Over-Torque detection enabled during acceleration. After over-torque is detected, keep running until OL1 or OL occurs.
	4	Over-Torque detection enabled during acceleration. After over-torque is detected, stop running.

📖 This parameter determines the operation mode of the drive after the over-torque (OL2) is detected via the following method: if the output current exceeds the over-torque detection level (Pr.06.04) longer than the setting of Pr.06.05 Over-Torque Detection Time, the warning message “OL2” is displayed. If a Multi-functional Output Terminal is set to over-torque detection (Pr.03.00~03.01=04), the output is on. Please refer to Pr.03.00~03.01 for details.

06.04	✓Over-Torque Detection Level (OL2)	Unit: 1
Settings	10 to 200%	Factory Setting: 150

📖 This setting is proportional to the Rated Output Current of the drive.

06.05	Over-Torque Detection Time (OL2)	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.1 to 60.0 sec	Factory Setting: 0.1

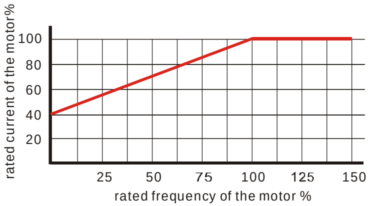
📖 This parameter sets the time for how long over-torque must be detected before “OL2” is displayed.

06.06	Electronic Thermal Overload Relay Selection (OL1)

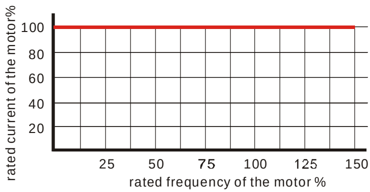
Factory Setting: 2

Settings	0	Operate with a Standard Motor (self-cooled by fan)
	1	Operate with a Special Motor (forced external cooling)
	2	Operation disabled

📖 This function is used to protect the motor from overloading or overheating.



Standard motor
(self-cooled by fan)

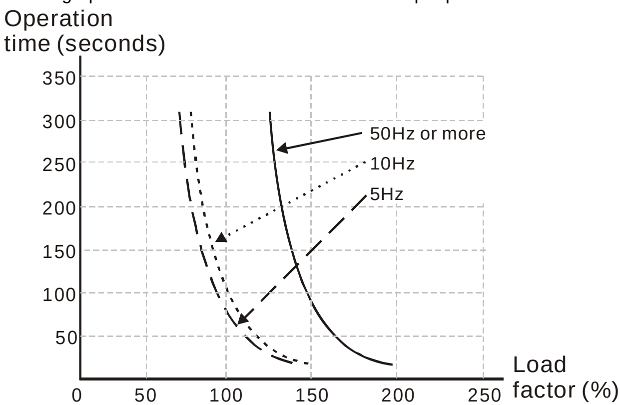


Special Motor
(forced external cooling)

06.07	Electronic Thermal Characteristic	Unit: 1

Settings	30 to 600 sec	Factory Setting: 60

📖 The parameter determines the time required for activating the I^2t electronic thermal protection function. The graph below shows I^2t curves for 150% output power for 1 minute.



06.08	Present Fault Record
06.09	Second Most Recent Fault Record
06.10	Third Most Recent Fault Record
06.11	Fourth Most Recent Fault Record
06.12	Fifth Most Recent Fault Record

Factory Setting: 0

Readings	0	No fault
	1	Over-current (oc)
	2	Over-voltage (ov)
	3	IGBT Overheat (oH1)
	4	Power Board Overheat (oH2)
	5	Overload(oL)
	6	Overload (oL1)
	7	Motor Overload (oL2)
	8	External Fault (EF)
	9	Hardware protection failure (HPF)
	10	Current exceeds 2 times rated current during accel.(ocA)
	11	Current exceeds 2 times rated current during decel.(ocd)
	12	Current exceeds 2 times rated current during steady state operation (ocn)
	13	Reserved
	14	Phase-loss (PHL)
	15	Reserved
	16	Auto accel/decel failure (CFA)
	17	Software/password protection (codE)
	18	Power Board CPU WRITE Failure (cF1.0)
	19	Power Board CPU READ Failure (cF2.0)
	20	CC, OC Hardware protection failure (HPF1)
	21	OV Hardware protection failure (HPF2)
	22	GFF Hardware protection failure (HPF3)
	23	OC Hardware protection failure (HPF4)
	24	U-phase error (cF3.0)
	25	V-phase error (cF3.1)
	26	W-phase error (cF3.2)
	27	DCBUS error (cF3.3)
	28	IGBT Overheat (cF3.4)

29	Power Board Overheat (cF3.5)
30	Control Board CPU WRITE failure (cF1.1)
31	Contrsol Board CPU READ failure (cF2.1)
32	ACI signal error (AErr)
33	Reserved
34	Motor PTC overheat protection (PtC1)
35-39	Reserved
40	Communication time-out error of control board and power board (CP10)

📖 In Pr.06.08 to Pr.06.12 the five most recent faults that occurred, are stored. After removing the cause of the fault, use the reset command to reset the drive.

Group 7: Motor Parameters

07.00	✗Motor Rated Current		Unit: 1
	Settings	30% FLA to 120% FLA	Factory Setting: FLA

📖 Use the following formula to calculate the percentage value entered in this parameter:

(Motor Current / AC Drive Current) x 100%

with Motor Current=Motor rated current in A on type shield

AC Drive Current=Rated current of AC drive in A (see Pr.00.01)

📖 Pr.07.00 and Pr.07.01 must be set if the drive is programmed to operate in Vector Control mode (Pr.00.10 = 1). They also must be set if the "Electronic Thermal Overload Relay" (Pr.06.06) or "Slip Compensation"(Pr.07-03) functions are selected.

07.01	✗Motor No-load Current		Unit: 1
	Settings	0% FLA to 90% FLA	Factory Setting: 0.4*FLA

📖 The rated current of the AC drive is regarded as 100%. The setting of the Motor no-load current will affect the slip compensation.

📖 The setting value must be less than Pr.07.00 (Motor Rated Current).

07.02	✗Torque Compensation		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 10.0	Factory Setting: 0.0

📖 This parameter may be set so that the AC drive will increase its voltage output to obtain a higher torque. Only to be used for V/f control mode.

📖 Too high torque compensation can overheat the motor.

07.03	✗Slip Compensation (Used without PG)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.00 to 10.00	Factory Setting: 0.00

📖 While driving an asynchronous motor, increasing the load on the AC motor drive will cause an increase in slip and decrease in speed. This parameter may be used to compensate the slip by increasing the output frequency. When the output current of the AC motor drive is bigger than the motor no-load current (Pr.07.01), the AC drive will adjust its output frequency according to this parameter.

07.04	Motor Parameters Auto Tuning		Unit: 1
			Factory Setting: 0
	Settings	0 Disable	

1	Auto Tuning R1 (motor doesn't run)
2	Auto Tuning R1 + No-load Test (with running motor)

- Start Auto Tuning by pressing RUN key after this parameter is set to 1 or 2.
  When set to 1, it will only auto detect R1 value and Pr.07.01 must be input manually. When set to 2, the AC motor drive should be unloaded and the values of Pr.07.01 and Pr.07.05 will be set automatically.
- The steps for AUTO-Tuning are:
  1. Make sure that all the parameters are set to factory settings and the motor wiring is correct.
  2. Make sure the motor has no-load before executing auto-tuning and the shaft is not connected to any belt or gear motor.
  3. Fill in Pr.01.01, Pr.01.02, Pr.07.00, Pr.07.04 and Pr.07.06 with correct values.
  4. After Pr.07.04 is set to 2, the AC motor drive will execute auto-tuning immediately after receiving a "RUN" command. (Note: The motor will run!). The total auto tune time will be 15 seconds + Pr.01.09 + Pr.01.10. Higher power drives need longer Accel/Decel time (factory setting is recommended). After executing Auto-tune, Pr.07.04 is set to 0.
  5. After executing, please check if there are values filled in Pr.07.01 and Pr.07.05. If not, please press RUN key after setting Pr.07.04 again.
  6. Then you can set Pr.00.10 to 1 and set other parameters according to your application requirement.

NOTE

1. In vector control mode it is not recommended to have motors run in parallel.
2. It is not recommended to use vector control mode if motor rated power exceeds the rated power of the AC motor drive.

07.05	Motor Line-to-line Resistance R1	Unit: 1
	Settings 0 to 65535 mΩ	Factory Setting: 0

- The motor auto tune procedure will set this parameter. The user may also set this parameter without using Pr.07.04.

07.06	Motor Rated Slip	Unit: 0.01
	Settings 0.00 to 20.00Hz	Factory Setting: 3.00

📖 Refer to the rated rpm and the number of poles on the nameplate of the motor and use the following equation to calculate the rated slip.

Rated Slip (Hz) = F_{base} (Pr.01.01 base frequency) – (rated rpm x motor pole 120)

07.07	Slip Compensation Limit		Unit: 1
	Settings	0 to 250%	Factory Setting: 200

📖 This parameter sets the upper limit of the compensation frequency (the percentage of Pr.07.06).

Example: when Pr.07.06=5Hz and Pr.07.07=150%, the upper limit of the compensation frequency is 7.5Hz. Therefore, for a 50Hz motor, the max. output is 57.5Hz.

07.08	Torque Compensation Time Constant		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.01 ~10.00 sec	Factory Setting: 0.10
07.09	Slip Compensation Time Constant		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.05 ~10.00 sec	Factory Setting: 0.20

📖 Setting Pr.07.08 and Pr.07.09 changes the response time for the compensations.

📖 Too long time constants give slow response; too short values can give unstable operation.

07.10	Accumulative Motor Operation Time (Min.)		Unit: 1
	Settings	0~1439	Factory Setting: 0
07.11	Accumulative Motor Operation Time (Day)		Unit: 1
	Settings	0 ~65535	Factory Setting: 0

📖 Pr.07.10 and Pr.07.11 are used to record the motor operation time. They can be cleared by setting to 0 and time is less than 1 minute is not recorded.

07.12	Motor PTC Overheat Protection		Unit: 1
			Factory Setting: 0
	Settings	0 Disable	
		1 Enable	
07.14	Motor PTC Overheat Protection Level		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.1~10.0V	Factory Setting: 2.4

📖 When the motor is running at low frequency for a long time, the cooling function of the motor fan will be lower. To prevent overheating, it needs to have a Positive Temperature Coefficient thermistor on the motor and connect its output signal to the drive's corresponding control terminals.

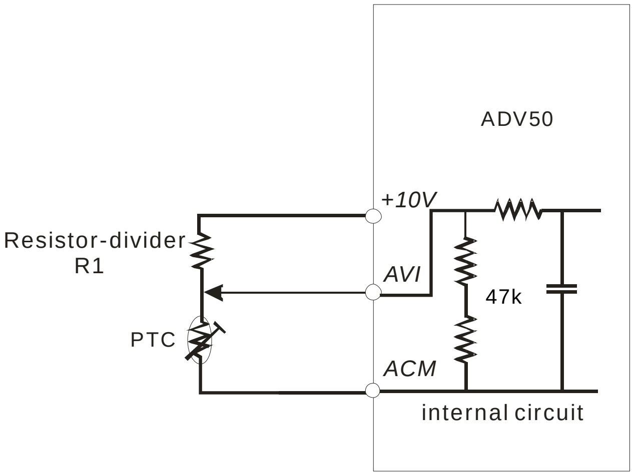
- When the source of first/second frequency command is set to AVI (02.00=1/02.09=1), it will disable the function of motor PTC overheat protection (i.e. Pr.07.12 cannot be set to 1).
- If temperature exceeds the setting level, motor will be coast to stop and PtC1 is displayed. When the temperature decreases below the level of (Pr.07.15-Pr.07.16) and PtC1 stops blinking, you can press RESET key to clear the fault.
- Pr.07.14 (overheat protection level) must exceed Pr.07.15 (overheat warning level).
- The PTC uses the AVI-input and is connected via resistor-divider as shown below.

  The voltage between +10V to ACM: lies within 10.4V~11.2V.

  The impedance for AVI is around 47kΩ.

  Recommended value for resistor-divider R1 is 1~20kΩ.

  Please contact your motor dealer for the curve of temperature and resistance value for PTC.



Refer to following calculation for protection level and warning level.

Protection level

Pr.07.14= V_{+10} * (R_{PTC1}//47K) / [R1+(R_{PTC1}//47K)]

Warning level

Pr.07.16= V_{+10} * (R_{PTC2}//47K) / [R1+(R_{PTC2}//47K)]

Definition:

V+10: voltage between +10V-ACM, Range 10.4~11.2VDC

RPTC1: motor PTC overheat protection level. Corresponding voltage level set in Pr.07.14,

RPTC2: motor PTC overheat warning level. Corresponding voltage level set in Pr.07.15,

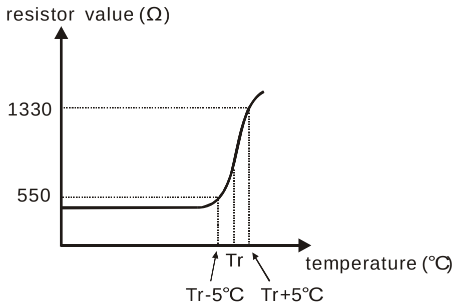
47kΩ: is AVI input impedance, R1: resistor-divider (recommended value: 1~20kΩ)

Take the standard PTC thermistor as example: if protection level is 1330Ω, the voltage between +10V-ACM is 10.5V and resistor-divider R1 is 4.4kΩ. Refer to following calculation for Pr.07.14 setting.

1330//47000=(1330*47000)/(1330+47000)=1293.4

10.5*1293.4/(4400+1293.4)=2.38(V) ≒2.4(V)

Therefore, Pr.07.14 should be set to 2.4.



07.15	Motor PTC Overheat Warning Level	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.1~10.0V	Factory Setting: 1.2
07.16	Motor PTC Overheat Reset Delta Level	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.1~5.0V	Factory Setting: 0.6
07.17	Treatment of the motor PTC Overheat	
		Factory Setting: 0
	Settings 0 Warn and RAMP to stop	
	1 Warn and COAST to stop	
	2 Warn and keep running	

📖 If temperature exceeds the motor PTC overheat warning level (Pr.07.15), the drive will act according to Pr.07.17 and display PtC2. If the temperature decreases below the result (Pr.07.15 minus Pr.07.16), the warning display will disappear.

07.13	Input Debouncing Time of the PTC Protection		Unit: 2
	Settings	0~9999 (is 0-19998ms)	Factory Setting: 100

📖 This parameter is to delay the signals on PTC analog input terminals. 1 unit is 2 msec, 2 units are 4 msec, etc.

Group 8: Special Parameters

08.00	DC Braking Current Level	Unit: 1
	Settings 0 to 100%	Factory Setting: 0

📖 This parameter sets the level of DC Braking Current output to the motor during start-up and stopping. When setting DC Braking Current, the Rated Current (Pr.00.01) is regarded as 100%. It is recommended to start with a low DC Braking Current Level and then increase until proper holding torque has been achieved.

08.01	DC Braking Time during Start-up	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 60.0 sec	Factory Setting: 0.0

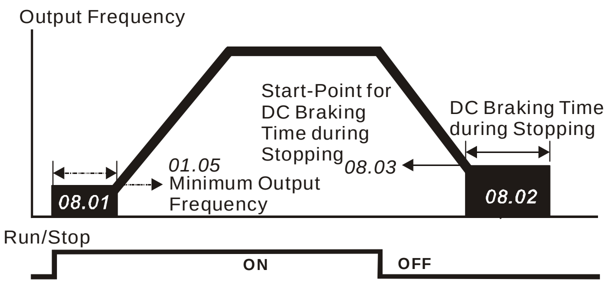
📖 This parameter determines the duration of the DC Braking current after a RUN command. When the time has elapsed, the AC motor drive will start accelerating from the Minimum Frequency (Pr.01.05).

08.02	DC Braking Time during Stopping	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 60.0 sec	Factory Setting: 0.0

📖 This parameter determines the duration of the DC Braking current during stopping. If stopping with DC Braking is desired, Pr.02.02 Stop Method must be set to 0 or 2 for Ramp to Stop.

08.03	Start-Point for DC Braking	Unit: 0.01
	Settings 0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00

📖 This parameter determines the frequency when DC Braking will begin during deceleration.



DC Braking Time

📖 DC Braking during Start-up is used for loads that may move before the AC drive starts, such as fans and pumps. Under such circumstances, DC Braking can be used to hold the load in position before setting it in motion.

📖 DC Braking during stopping is used to shorten the stopping time and also to hold a stopped load in position. For high inertia loads, a brake resistor for dynamic braking may also be needed for fast decelerations.

08.04	Momentary Power Loss Operation Selection	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Operation stops (coast to stop) after momentary power loss.
	1	Operation continues after momentary power loss, speed search starts with the Master Frequency reference value.
	2	Operation continues after momentary power loss, speed search starts with the minimum frequency.

📖 This parameter determines the operation mode when the AC motor drive restarts from a momentary power loss.

08.05	Maximum Allowable Power Loss Time	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.1 to 5.0 sec	Factory Setting: 2.0

📖 If the duration of a power loss is less than this parameter setting, the AC motor drive will resume operation. If it exceeds the Maximum Allowable Power Loss Time, the AC motor drive output is then turned off (coast stop).

📖 The selected operation after power loss in Pr.08.04 is only executed when the maximum allowable power loss time is ≤5 seconds and the AC motor drive displays “Lu”.
But if the AC motor drive is powered off due to overload, even if the maximum allowable power loss time is ≤5 seconds, the operation mode as set in Pr.08.04 is not executed. In that case it starts up normally.

08.06	Base Block Speed Search	
		Factory Setting: 1
Settings	0	Disable
	1	Speed search starts with last frequency command
	2	Speed search starts with minimum output frequency (Pr.01.05)

📖 This parameter determines the AC motor drive restart method after External Base Block is enabled.

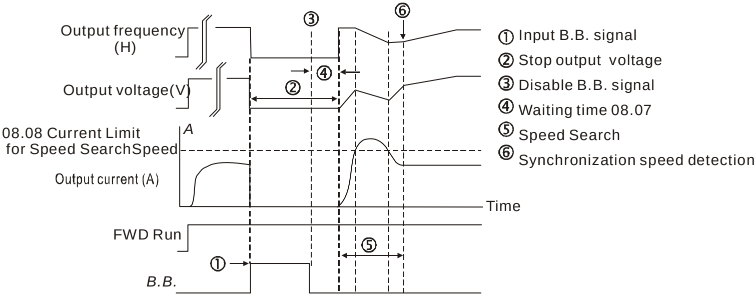


Fig 1:B.B. Speed Search with Last Output Frequency Downward Timing Chart
(Speed Search Current Attains Speed Search Level)

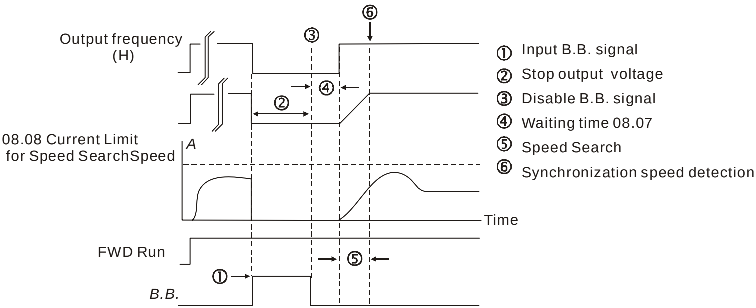


Fig 2: B.B. Speed Search with Last Output Frequency Downward Timing Chart
(Speed Search Current doesn't Attain Speed Search Level)

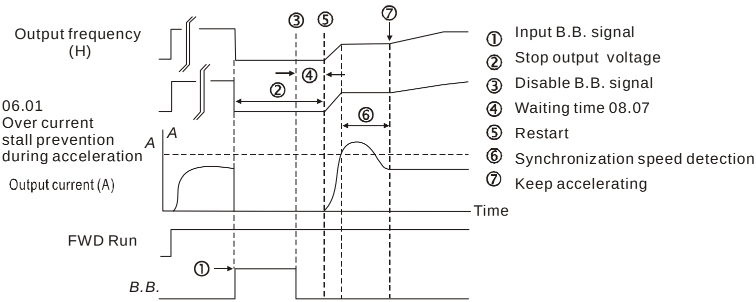


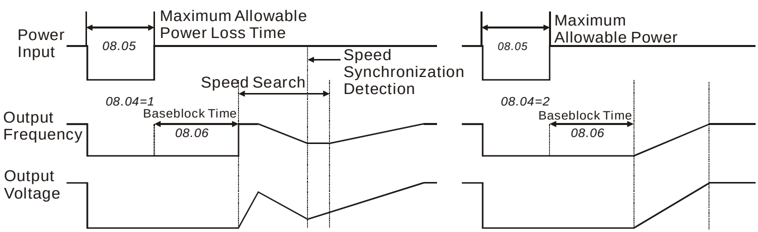
Fig3: B.B. Speed Search with Minimum Output Frequency Upward Timing Chart

08.07	Baseblock Time for Speed Search (BB)		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.1 to 5.0 sec	Factory Setting: 0.5

- When momentary power loss is detected, the AC motor drive will block its output and then wait for a specified period of time (determined by Pr.08.07, called Base-Block Time) before resuming operation. This parameter should be set at a value to ensure that any residual regeneration voltage from the motor on the output has disappeared before the drive is activated again.
- This parameter also determines the waiting time before resuming operation after External Baseblock and Auto Restart after Fault (Pr.08.15).
- When using a PG card with PG (encoder), speed search will begin at the actual PG (encoder) feedback speed.

08.08	Current Limit for Speed Search		Unit: 1
	Settings	30 to 200%	Factory Setting: 150

- Following a momentary power loss, the AC motor drive will start its speed search operation only if the output current is greater than the value set by Pr.08.08. When the output current is less than the value of Pr.08.08, the AC motor drive output frequency is at “speed synchronization point”. The drive will start to accelerate or decelerate back to the operating frequency at which it was running prior to the power loss.



Momentary Power Loss Operation

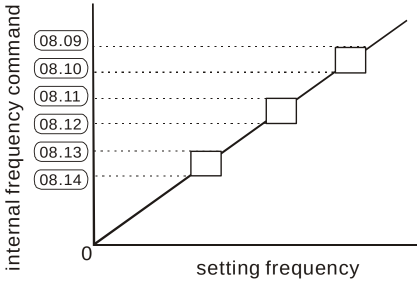
08.09	Skip Frequency 1 Upper Limit	Unit: 0.01
08.10	Skip Frequency 1 Lower Limit	Unit: 0.01
08.11	Skip Frequency 2 Upper Limit	Unit: 0.01
08.12	Skip Frequency 2 Lower Limit	Unit: 0.01

08.13	Skip Frequency 3 Upper Limit	Unit: 0.01
08.14	Skip Frequency 3 Lower Limit	Unit: 0.01
	Settings 0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00

📖 These parameters set the Skip Frequencies. It will cause the AC motor drive never to remain within these frequency ranges with continuous frequency output.

📖 These six parameters should be set as follows Pr.08.09 ≥ Pr.08.10 ≥ Pr.08.11 ≥ Pr.08.12 ≥ Pr.08.13 ≥ Pr.08.14.

📖 The frequency ranges may be overlapping.



08.15	Auto Restart After Fault	Unit: 1
	Settings 0 to 10	Factory Setting: 0
	0 Disable	

📖 Only after an over-current OC or over-voltage OV fault occurs, the AC motor drive can be reset/restarted automatically up to 10 times.

📖 Setting this parameter to 0 will disable automatic reset/restart operation after any fault has occurred.

When enabled, the AC motor drive will restart with speed search, which starts at the frequency before the fault. To set the waiting time before restart after a fault, please set Pr. 08.07 Base Block Time for Speed Search.

08.16	Auto Reset Time at Restart after Fault	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.1 to 6000 sec	Factory Setting: 60.0

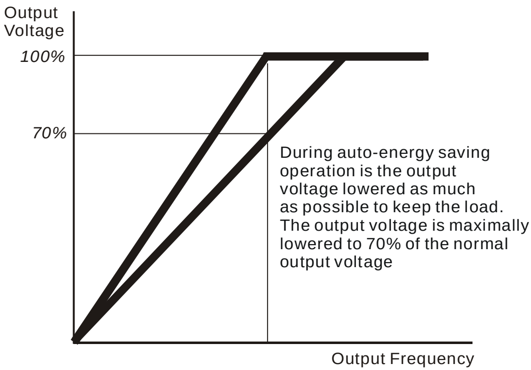
📖 This parameter should be used in conjunction with Pr.08.15.

For example: If Pr.08.15 is set to 10 and Pr.08.16 is set to 600s (10 min), and if there is no fault for over 600 seconds from the restart for the previous fault, the auto reset times for restart after fault will be reset to 10.

08.17 Automatic Energy-saving

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Energy-saving operation disabled
	1	Energy-saving operation enabled



08.18 Automatic Voltage Regulation (AVR)

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	AVR function enabled
	1	AVR function disabled
	2	AVR function disabled for deceleration
	3	AVR function disabled for stop

📖 The rated voltage of the motor is usually 230V/200VAC 50Hz/60Hz and the input voltage of the AC motor drive may vary between 180V to 264 VAC 50Hz/60Hz. Therefore, when the AC motor drive is used without AVR function, the output voltage will be the same as the input voltage. When the motor runs at voltages exceeding the rated voltage with 12% - 20%, its lifetime will be shorter and it can be damaged due to higher temperature, failing insulation and unstable torque output.

📖 AVR function automatically regulates the AC motor drive output voltage to the Maximum Output Voltage (Pr.01.02). For instance, if Pr.01.02 is set at 200 VAC and the input voltage is at 200V to 264VAC, then the Maximum Output Voltage will automatically be reduced to a maximum of 200VAC.

📖 When the motor ramps to stop, the deceleration time is longer. When setting this parameter to 2 with auto acceleration/deceleration, the deceleration will be quicker.

08.19	Software Braking Level (the Action Level of the Brake resistor)		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	230V series: 370.0 to 430.0V	Factory Setting: 380.0
		460V series: 740.0 to 860.0V	Factory Setting: 760.0

📖 This parameter sets the DC-bus voltage at which the brake chopper is activated.

📖 This parameter will be invalid for Frame A models (ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF/4F, ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF/2T/4F and ADV50-1015-XXX-2T/4F) without brake chopper for which BU-2/4-ADV20/50 brake unit must be used.

08.20	⌿Compensation Coefficient for Motor Instability		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0~5.0	Factory Setting: 0.0

📖 The drift current will occur in a specific zone of the motor and it will make motor instable. By using this parameter, it will improve this situation greatly.

📖 The drift current zone of the high-power motors is usually in the low frequency area.

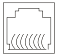
📖 It is recommended to set to more than 2.0.

Group 9: Communication Parameters

There is a built-in RS-485 serial interface, marked RJ-45 near to the control terminals. The pins are defined below:

RS-485

8←1 Serial interface



1: Reserved 2: EV 3: GND
4: SG- 5: SG+ 6: Reserved
7: Reserved 8: Reserved

Each ADV50 AC motor drive has a pre-assigned communication address specified by Pr.09.00. The RS485 master then controls each AC motor drive according to its communication address.

09.00	⌿Communication Address		
	Settings	1 to 254	Factory Setting: 1

📖 If the AC motor drive is controlled by RS-485 serial communication, the communication address for this drive must be set via this parameter. And the communication address for each AC motor drive must be different and unique.

09.01	⌿Transmission Speed		
			Factory Setting: 1
Settings	0	Baud rate 4800 bps (bits / second)	
	1	Baud rate 9600 bps	
	2	Baud rate 19200 bps	
	3	Baud rate 38400 bps	

📖 This parameter is used to set the transmission speed between the RS485 master (PLC, PC, etc.) and AC motor drive.

09.02	⌿Transmission Fault Treatment		
			Factory Setting: 3
Settings	0	Warn and keep operating	
	1	Warn and RAMP to stop	
	2	Warn and COAST to stop	
	3	No warning and keep operating	

📖 This parameter is set to how to react if transmission errors occur.

📖 See list of error messages below (see section 3.6.)

09.03	⌿Time-out Detection	Unit: 0.1

Settings 0.0 to 120.0 sec — Factory Setting: 0.0

0.0 Disable

📖 If Pr.09.03 is not equal to 0.0, Pr.09.02=0~2, and there is no communication on the bus during the Time Out detection period (set by Pr.09.03), “cE10” will be shown on the keypad.

09.04	⌿Communication Protocol

Factory Setting: 0

Settings		
	0	Modbus ASCII mode, protocol <7,N,2>
	1	Modbus ASCII mode, protocol <7,E,1>
	2	Modbus ASCII mode, protocol <7,O,1>
	3	Modbus RTU mode, protocol <8,N,2>
	4	Modbus RTU mode, protocol <8,E,1>
	5	Modbus RTU mode, protocol <8,O,1>

📖 1. Control by PC or PLC

★ADV50 can be set up to communicate in Modbus networks using one of the following modes: ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) or RTU (Remote Terminal Unit). Users can select the desired mode along with the serial port communication protocol in Pr.09.04.

★Code Description:

The CPU will be about 1 second delay when using communication reset. Therefore, there is at least 1 second delay time in master station.

ASCII mode:

Each 8-bit data is the combination of two ASCII characters. For example, a 1-byte data: 64 Hex, shown as ‘64’ in ASCII, consists of ‘6’ (36Hex) and ‘4’ (34Hex).

Character	‘0’	‘1’	‘2’	‘3’	‘4’	‘5’	‘6’	‘7’
ASCII code	30H	31H	32H	33H	34H	35H	36H	37H

Character	‘8’	‘9’	‘A’	‘B’	‘C’	‘D’	‘E’	‘F’
ASCII code	38H	39H	41H	42H	43H	44H	45H	46H

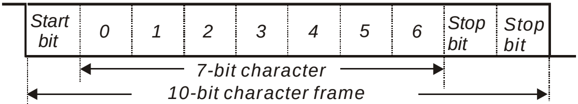
RTU mode:

Each 8-bit data is the combination of two 4-bit hexadecimal characters. For example, 64 Hex.

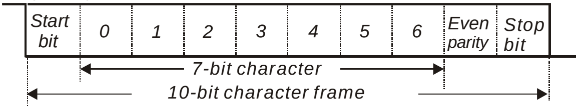
📖 2. Data Format

10-bit character frame (For ASCII):

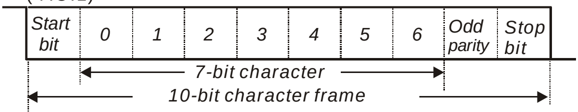
(7.N.2)



(7.E.1)

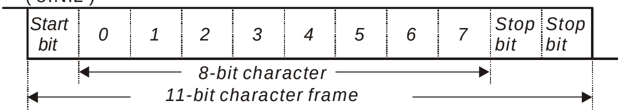


(7.O.1)

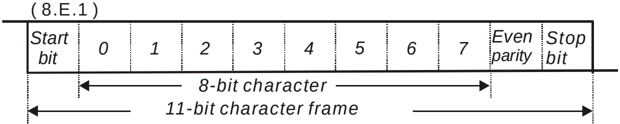


11-bit character frame (For RTU):

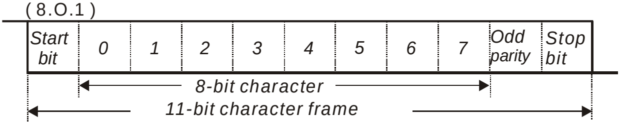
(8.N.2)



(8.E.1)



(8.O.1)



3. Communication Protocol

3.1 Communication Data Frame:

ASCII mode:

STX	Start character ':' (3AH)
Address Hi	Communication address:
Address Lo	8-bit address consists of 2 ASCII codes
Function Hi	Command code:
Function Lo	8-bit command consists of 2 ASCII codes

DATA (n-1) to DATA 0	Contents of data: Nx8-bit data consist of 2n ASCII codes n<=20, maximum of 40 ASCII codes
LRC CHK Hi	LRC check sum: 8-bit check sum consists of 2 ASCII codes
LRC CHK Lo	
END Hi	End characters: END1= CR (0DH), END0= LF(0AH)
END Lo	

RTU mode:

START	A silent interval of more than 10 ms
Address	Communication address: 8-bit address
Function	Command code: 8-bit command
DATA (n-1) to DATA 0	Contents of data: n×8-bit data, n<=40 (20 x 16-bit data)
CRC CHK Low	CRC check sum: 16-bit check sum consists of 2 8-bit characters
CRC CHK High	
END	A silent interval of more than 10 ms

3.2 Address (Communication Address)

Valid communication addresses are in the range of 0 to 254. A communication address equal to 0, means broadcast to all AC drives (AMD). In this case, the AMD will not reply any message to the master device.

00H: broadcast to all AC drives
01H: AC drive of address 01
0FH: AC drive of address 15
10H: AC drive of address 16
:
FEH: AC drive of address 254

For example, communication to AMD with address 16 decimal (10H):

ASCII mode: Address=’1’,’0’ => ‘1’=31H, ‘0’=30H
RTU mode: Address=10H

3.3 Function (Function code) and DATA (data characters)

The format of data characters depends on the function code.
03H: read data from register
06H: write single register
08H: loop detection

The available function codes and examples for ADV50 are described as follows:

(1) 03H: multi read, read data from registers.
Example: reading continuous 2 data from register address 2102H, AMD address is 01H.

ASCII mode:

Command message:

STX	‘:’
Address	‘0’
	‘1’
Function	‘0’
	‘3’
Starting data address	‘2’
	‘1’
	‘0’
	‘2’
Number of data (count by word)	‘0’
	‘0’
	‘0’
	‘2’
LRC Check	‘D’
	‘7’
END	CR
	LF

Response message:

STX	‘:’
Address	‘0’
	‘1’
Function	‘0’
	‘3’
Number of data (Count by byte)	‘0’
	‘4’
Content of starting address 2102H	‘1’
	‘7’
	‘7’
	‘0’
Content of address 2103H	‘0’
	‘0’
	‘0’
	‘0’
LRC Check	‘7’
	‘1’
END	CR
	LF

RTU mode:

Command message:

Address	01H
Function	03H
Starting data address	21H
	02H
Number of data (count by word)	00H
	02H

Response message:

Address	01H
Function	03H
Number of data (count by byte)	04H
Content of address 2102H	17H
	70H

CRC CHK Low	6FH
CRC CHK High	F7H

Content of address 2103H	00H
	00H
CRC CHK Low	FEH
CRC CHK High	5CH

(2) 06H: single write, write single data to register.

Example: writing data 6000(1770H) to register 0100H. AMD address is 01H.

ASCII mode:

Command message:

STX	‘:’
Address	‘0’
	‘1’
Function	‘0’
	‘6’
Data address	‘0’
	‘1’
	‘0’
	‘0’
Data content	‘1’
	‘7’
	‘7’
	‘0’
LRC Check	‘7’
	‘1’
END	CR
	LF

Response message:

STX	‘:’
Address	‘0’
	‘1’
Function	‘0’
	‘6’
Data address	‘0’
	‘1’
	‘0’
	‘0’
Data content	‘1’
	‘7’
	‘7’
	‘0’
LRC Check	‘7’
	‘1’
END	CR
	LF

RTU mode:

Command message:

Address	01H
Function	06H
Data address	01H

Response message:

Address	01H
Function	06H
Data address	01H

	00H
Data content	17H
	70H
CRC CHK Low	86H
CRC CHK High	22H

	00H
Data content	17H
	70H
CRC CHK Low	86H
CRC CHK High	22H

3.4 Check sum

ASCII mode:

LRC (Longitudinal Redundancy Check) is calculated by summing up, module 256, the values of the bytes from ADR1 to last data character then calculating the hexadecimal representation of the 2's-complement negation of the sum.

For example, reading 1 word from address 0401H of the AC drive with address 01H.

STX	':'
Address 1 Address 0	'0'
	'1'
Function 1 Function 0	'0'
	'3'
Starting data address	'0'
	'4'
	'0'
	'1'
Number of data	'0'
	'0'
	'0'
	'1'
LRC Check 1 LRC Check 0	'F'
	'6'
END 1 END 0	CR
	LF

01H+03H+04H+01H+00H+01H=0AH, the 2's-complement negation of 0AH is **F6**H.

RTU mode:

Address	01H
Function	03H
Starting data address	21H
	02H
Number of data (count by word)	00H
	02H
CRC CHK Low	6FH
CRC CHK High	F7H

CRC (Cyclical Redundancy Check) is calculated by the following steps:

Step 1: Load a 16-bit register (called CRC register) with FFFFH.

Step 2: Exclusive OR the first 8-bit byte of the command message with the low order byte of the 16-bit CRC register, putting the result in the CRC register.

Step 3: Examine the LSB of CRC register.

Step 4: If the LSB of CRC register is 0, shift the CRC register one bit to the right with MSB zero filling, then repeat step 3. If the LSB of CRC register is 1, shift the CRC register one bit to the right with MSB zero filling, Exclusive OR the CRC register with the polynomial value A001H, then repeat step 3.

Step 5: Repeat step 3 and 4 until eight shifts have been performed. When this is done, a complete 8-bit byte will have been processed.

Step 6: Repeat step 2 to 5 for the next 8-bit byte of the command message. Continue doing this until all bytes have been processed. The final contents of the CRC register are the CRC value. When transmitting the CRC value in the message, the upper and lower bytes of the CRC value must be swapped, i.e. the lower order byte will be transmitted first.

The following is an example of CRC generation using C language. The function takes two arguments:

Unsigned char* data ← a pointer to the message buffer

Unsigned char length ← the quantity of bytes in the message buffer

The function returns the CRC value as a type of unsigned integer.

```
Unsigned int crc_chk(unsigned char* data, unsigned char length){
  int j;
  unsigned int reg_crc=0xFFFF;
  while(length--){
    reg_crc ^= *data++;
    for(j=0;j<8;j++){
      if(reg_crc & 0x01){  /* LSB(b0)=1 */
```

```
        reg_crc=(reg_crc>>1) ^ 0xA001;
      }else{
        reg_crc=reg_crc >>1;
      }
    }
  }
 return reg_crc;
}
```

3.5 Address list

The contents of available addresses are shown as below:

<table>
<tr><th>Content</th><th>Address</th><th colspan="2">Function</th></tr>
<tr><td>AC drive Parameters</td><td>GGnnH</td><td colspan="2">GG means parameter group, nn means parameter number, for example, the address of Pr 04.01 is 0401H. Refer to chapter 5 for the function of each parameter. When reading parameter by command code 03H, only one parameter can be read at one time.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">Command Write only</td><td rowspan="5">2000H</td><td>Bit 0-1</td><td>00B: No function
01B: Stop
10B: Run
11B: Jog + Run</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 2-3</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 4-5</td><td>00B: No function
01B: FWD
10B: REV
11B: Change direction</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 6-7</td><td>00B: Comm. forced 1st accel/decel
01B: Comm. forced 2nd accel/decel</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 8-15</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>2001H</td><td colspan="2">Frequency command</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2002H</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>1: EF (external fault) on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>1: Reset</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 2-15</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Status monitor</td><td rowspan="2">2100H</td><td colspan="2">Error code:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0: No error occurred</td></tr>
</table>

Content	Address	Function
Read only		1: Over-current (oc)
		2: Over-voltage (ov)
		3: IGBT Overheat (oH1)
		4: Power Board Overheat (oH2)
		5: Overload (oL)
		6: Overload1 (oL1)
		7: Overload2 (oL2)
		8: External fault (EF)
		9: Current exceeds 2 times rated current during accel (ocA)
		10: Current exceeds 2 times rated current during decel (ocd) Current exceeds 2 times rated current during decel (ocd)
		11: Current exceeds 2 times rated current during steady state operation (ocn)
		12: Ground Fault (GFF)
Status monitor Read only	2100H	13: Low voltage (Lv)
		14: PHL (Phase-Loss)
		15: Base Block
		16: Auto accel/decel failure (cFA)
		17: Software protection enabled (codE)
		18: Power Board CPU WRITE failure (CF1.0)
		19: Power Board CPU READ failure (CF2.0)
		20: CC, OC Hardware protection failure (HPF1)
		21: OV Hardware protection failure (HPF2)
		22: GFF Hardware protection failure (HPF3)
		23: OC Hardware protection failure (HPF4)
		24: U-phase error (cF3.0)
		25: V-phase error (cF3.1)
		26: W-phase error (cF3.2)
		27: DCBUS error (cF3.3)
	2100H	28: IGBT Overheat (cF3.4)
		29: Power Board Overheat (cF3.5)

Content	Address	Function	
		30: Control Board CPU WRITE failure (cF1.1)	
		31: Control Board CPU WRITE failure (cF2.1)	
		32: ACI signal error (AErr)	
		33: Reserved	
		34: Motor PTC overheat protection (PtC1)	
	2101H	Status of AC drive	
		Bit 0-1	00B: RUN LED is off, STOP LED is on (The AC motor Drive stops)
			01B: RUN LED blinks, STOP LED is on (When AC motor drive decelerates to stop)
			10B: RUN LED is on, STOP LED blinks (When AC motor drive is standby)
			11B: RUN LED is on, STOP LED is off (When AC motor drive runs)
		Bit 2	1: JOG command
		Bit 3-4	00B: FWD LED is on, REV LED is off (When AC motor drive runs forward)
			01B: FWD LED is on, REV LED blinks (When AC motor drive runs from reverse to forward)
			10B: FWD LED blinks, REV LED is on (When AC motor drive runs from forward to reverse)
			11B: FWD LED is off, REV LED is on (When AC motor drive runs reverse)
		Bit 5-7	Reserved
		Bit 8	1: Master frequency Controlled by communication interface
		Bit 9	1: Master frequency controlled by analog signal
		Bit 10	1: Operation command controlled by communication interface
		Bit 11-15	Reserved
	2102H	Frequency command (F)	
	2103H	Output frequency (H)	
	2104H	Output current (AXXX.X)	
	2105H	Reserved	

Content	Address	Function
	2106H	Reserved
	2107H	Reserved
	2108H	DC-BUS Voltage (UXXX.X)
	2109H	Output voltage (EXXX.X)
	210AH	Display temperature of IGBT (°C)
	2116H	User defined (Low word)
	2117H	User defined (High word)

Note: 2116H is number display of Pr.00.04. High byte of 2117H is number of decimal places of 2116H. Low byte of 2117H is ASCII code of alphabet display of Pr.00.04.

3.6 Exception response:

The AC motor drive is expected to return a normal response after receiving command messages from the master device. The following depicts the conditions when no normal response is replied to the master device.

The AC motor drive does not receive the messages due to a communication error; thus, the AC motor drive has no response. The master device will eventually process a timeout condition.

The AC motor drive receives the messages without a communication error, but cannot handle them. An exception response will be returned to the master device and an error message “CExx” will be displayed on the keypad of AC motor drive. The xx of “CExx” is a decimal code equal to the exception code that is described below.

In the exception response, the most significant bit of the original command code is set to 1, and an exception code which explains the condition that caused the exception is returned.

Example of an exception response of command code 06H and exception code 02H:

ASCII mode:

STX	‘:’
Address Low Address High	‘0’
	‘1’
Function Low Function High	‘8’
	‘6’
Exception code	‘0’
	‘2’
LRC CHK Low	‘7’

RTU mode:

Address	01H
Function	86H
Exception code	02H
CRC CHK Low	C3H
CRC CHK High	A1H

LRC CHK High	‘7’
END 1	CR
END 0	LF

The explanation of exception codes:

Exception code	Explanation
01	Illegal function code: The function code received in the command message is not available for the AC motor drive.
02	Illegal data address: The data address received in the command message is not available for the AC motor drive.
03	Illegal data value: The data value received in the command message is not available for the AC drive.
04	Slave device failure: The AC motor drive is unable to perform the requested action.
10	Communication time-out: If Pr.09.03 is not equal to 0.0, Pr.09.02=0~2, and there is no communication on the bus during the Time Out detection period (set by Pr.09.03), “cE10” will be shown on the keypad.

3.7 Communication program of PC:

The following is a simple example of how to write a communication program for Modbus ASCII mode on a PC in C language.

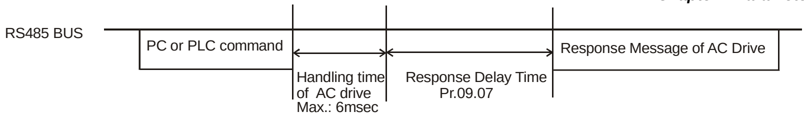
```
#include<stdio.h>
#include<dos.h>
#include<conio.h>
#include<process.h>
#define PORT 0x03F8  /* the address of COM1 */
/* the address offset value relative to COM1 */
#define THR  0x0000
#define RDR  0x0000
#define BRDL  0x0000
#define IER  0x0001
#define BRDH 0x0001
```

```
#define LCR  0x0003
#define MCR  0x0004
#define LSR  0x0005
#define MSR  0x0006
unsigned char rdat[60];
/* read 2 data from address 2102H of AC drive with address 1 */
unsigned char tdat[60]={':','0','1','0','3','2','1','0',’2', '0','0','0','2','D','7','\r','\n'};
void main(){
int i;
outportb(PORT+MCR,0x08);            /* interrupt enable */
outportb(PORT+IER,0x01);            /* interrupt as data in */
outportb(PORT+LCR,(inportb(PORT+LCR) | 0x80));
/* the BRDL/BRDH can be access as LCR.b7==1 */
outportb(PORT+BRDL,12);             /* set baudrate=9600, 12=115200/9600*/
outportb(PORT+BRDH,0x00);
outportb(PORT+LCR,0x06);            /* set protocol, <7,N,2>=06H, <7,E,1>=1AH,
<7,O,1>=0AH, <8,N,2>=07H, <8,E,1>=1BH, <8,O,1>=0BH   */
for(i=0;i<=16;i++){
while(!(inportb(PORT+LSR) & 0x20)); /* wait until THR empty */
outportb(PORT+THR,tdat[i]);       /* send data to THR */    }
i=0;
while(!kbhit()){
if(inportb(PORT+LSR) & 0x01){ /* b0==1, read data ready */
rdat[i++]=inportb(PORT+RDR); /* read data form RDR */
}   }    }
```

09.05	Reserved
09.06	Reserved

09.07	⚡Response Delay Time		Unit: 2ms
	Settings	0 ~ 200 (400msec)	Factory Setting: 1

📖 This parameter is the response delay time after AC drive receives communication command as shown in the following. 1 unit = 2 msec.



09.08 ⌿Transmission Speed for USB Card

Factory Setting: 2

Settings	0	Baud rate 4800 bps
	1	Baud rate 9600 bps
	2	Baud rate 19200 bps
	3	Baud rate 38400 bps
	4	Baud rate 57600 bps

📖 This parameter is used to set the transmission speed for USB card.

09.09 ⌿Communication Protocol for USB Card

Factory Setting: 1

Settings	0	Modbus ASCII mode, protocol <7,N,2>
	1	Modbus ASCII mode, protocol <7,E,1>
	2	Modbus ASCII mode, protocol <7,O,1>
	3	Modbus RTU mode, protocol <8,N,2>
	4	Modbus RTU mode, protocol <8,E,1>
	5	Modbus RTU mode, protocol <8,O,1>

09.10 ⌿Transmission Fault Treatment for USB Card

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Warn and keep operating
	1	Warn and RAMP to stop
	2	Warn and COAST to stop
	3	No warning and keep operating

📖 This parameter is set to how to react when transmission errors occurs.

09.11	⌿Time-out Detection for USB Card	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.0 to 120.0 sec	Factory Setting: 0.0
	0.0 Disable	

09.12	COM port for PLC Communication	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0 RS485	
	1 USB card	

Group 10: PID Control

10.00	PID Set Point Selection

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	Disable
	1	Digital keypad UP/DOWN keys
	2	AVI 0 ~ +10VDC
	3	ACI 4 ~ 20mA / AVI2 0 ~ +10VDC
	4	PID set point (Pr.10.11)

10.01	Input Terminal for PID Feedback

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	**Positive** PID feedback from external terminal AVI (0 ~ +10VDC).
	1	**Negative** PID feedback from external terminal AVI (0 ~ +10VDC).
	2	**Positive** PID feedback from external terminal ACI (4 ~ 20mA)/ AVI2 (0 ~ +10VDC).
	3	**Negative** PID feedback from external terminal ACI (4 ~ 20mA)/ AVI2 (0 ~ +10VDC).

- 🕮 Note that the measured variable (feedback) controls the output frequency (Hz). Select input terminal accordingly. Make sure this parameter setting does not conflict with the setting for Pr.10.00 (Master Frequency).
- 🕮 When Pr.10.00 is set to 2 or 3, the set point (Master Frequency) for PID control is obtained from the AVI or ACI/AVI2 external terminal (0 to +10V or 4-20mA) or from multi-step speed. When Pr.10.00 is set to 1, the set point is obtained from the keypad.
- 🕮 Negative feedback means: +target value – feedback

  Positive feedback means: -target value + feedback.

10.02	⁄⁄Proportional Gain (P)	Unit: 0. 1
	Settings 0.0 to 10.0	Factory Setting: 1.0

- 🕮 This parameter specifies proportional control and associated gain (P). If the other two gains (I and D) are set to zero, proportional control is the only one effective. With 10% deviation (error) and P=1, the output will be P x10% x Master Frequency.

NOTE

The parameter can be set during operation for easy tuning.

10.03	⚡Integral Time (I)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.00 to 100.0 sec	Factory Setting: 1.00
		0.00 Disable	

📖 This parameter specifies integral control (continual sum of the deviation) and associated gain (I). When the integral gain is set to 1 and the deviation is fixed, the output is equal to the input (deviation) once the integral time setting is attained.

NOTE

The parameter can be set during operation for easy tuning.

10.04	⚡Derivative Control (D)		Unit: 0.01
	Settings	0.00 to 1.00 sec	Factory Setting: 0.00

📖 This parameter specifies derivative control (rate of change of the input) and associated gain (D). With this parameter set to 1, the PID output is equal to differential time x (present deviation − previous deviation). It increases the response speed but it may cause over-compensation.

NOTE

The parameter can be set during operation for easy tuning.

10.05	Upper Bound for Integral Control		Unit: 1
	Settings	0 to 100 %	Factory Setting: 100

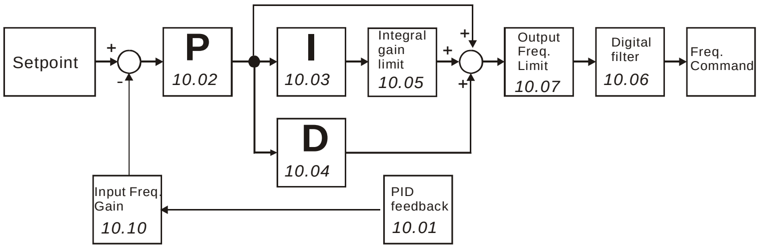
📖 This parameter defines an upper bound or limit for the integral gain (I) and therefore limits the Master Frequency.

📖 The formula is: Integral upper bound = Maximum Output Frequency (Pr.01.00) x (Pr.10.05). This parameter can limit the Maximum Output Frequency.

10.06	Primary Delay Filter Time		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 2.5 sec	Factory Setting: 0.0

📖 To avoid amplification of measurement noise in the controller output, a derivative digital filter is inserted. This filter helps to dampen oscillations.

The complete PID diagram is in the following:



10.07	PID Output Frequency Limit		Unit: 1
	Settings	0 to 110 %	Factory Setting: 100

📖 This parameter defines the percentage of output frequency limit during the PID control. The formula is Output Frequency Limit = Maximum Output Frequency (Pr.01.00) X Pr.10.07 %. This parameter will limit the Maximum Output Frequency. An overall limit for the output frequency can be set in Pr.01.07.

10.08	PID Feedback Signal Detection Time		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to d 3600 sec	Factory Setting: 60.0

📖 This parameter defines the time during which the PID feedback must be abnormal before a warning (see Pr.10.09) is given. It also can be modified according to the system feedback signal time.

📖 If this parameter is set to 0.0, the system would not detect any abnormality signal.

10.09	Treatment of the Erroneous Feedback Signals (for PID feedback error)	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Warning and RAMP to stop
	1	Warning and COAST to stop
	2	Warning and keep operating

📖 This function is only for ACI signal.

- AC motor drive action when the feedback signals (analog PID feedback) are abnormal according to Pr.10.16.

10.10	Gain Over the PID Detection Value	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.0 to 10.0	Factory Setting: 1.0

- This function is only for ACI signal.
- This is the gain adjustment over the feedback detection value. Refer to PID control block diagram in Pr.10.06 for detail.

10.11	⁄⁄ Source of PID Set point	Unit: 0.01
Settings	0.00 to 600.0Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00

- This parameter is used in conjunction with Pr.10.00 set 4 to input a set point in Hz.

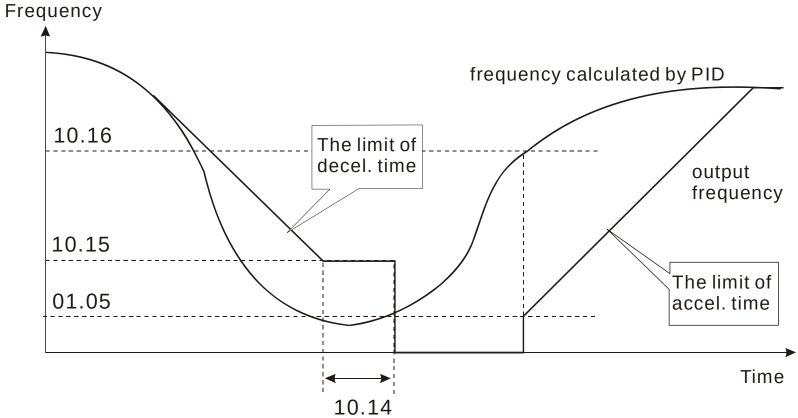
10.12	PID Offset Level	Unit: 0.1
Settings	1.0 to 50.0%	Factory Setting: 10.0
10.13	Detection Time of PID Offset	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.1 to 300.0 sec	Factory Setting: 5.0

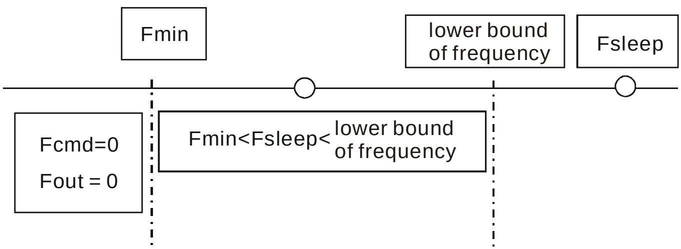
- This parameter is used to set detection of the offset between set point and feedback.
- When the offset is higher than the setting of Pr.10.12 for a time exceeding the setting of Pr.10.13, the AC motor drive will output a signal when Pr.03.00 ~ Pr.03.01 is set to 16.

10.14	Sleep/Wake Up Detection Time	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.0 to 6550 sec	Factory Setting: 0.0
10.15	Sleep Frequency	Unit: 0.01
Settings	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00
10.16	Wakeup Frequency	Unit: 0.01
Settings	0.00 to 600.0 Hz	Factory Setting: 0.00

- When the actual output frequency ≤ Pr.10.15 and the time exceeds the setting of Pr.10.14, the AC motor drive will be in sleep mode.
- When the actual frequency command > Pr.10.16 and the time exceeds the setting of Pr.10.14, the AC motor drive will restart.

- When the AC motor drive is in sleep mode, frequency command is still calculated by PID. When frequency reaches wake up frequency, AC motor drive will accelerate from Pr.01.05 minimum frequency following the V/f curve.
- The wake up frequency must be higher than sleep frequency.





- When output frequency ≤ sleep frequency and time > detection time, it will go in sleep mode.
- When min. output frequency ≦ PID frequency ≦ lower bound of frequency and sleep function is enabled (output frequency ≤ sleep frequency and time > detection time), frequency will be 0 (in sleep mode). If sleep function is disabled, frequency command = lower bound frequency.
- When PID frequency < min. output frequency and sleep function is enabled (output frequency ≤ sleep frequency and time > detection time), output frequency =0 (in sleep mode).
  If output frequency ≤ sleep frequency but time < detection time, frequency command = lower frequency. If sleep function is disabled, output frequency =0.

10.17 Minimum PID Output Frequency Selection

Factory Setting: 0

Settings	0	By PID control
	1	By Minimum output frequency (Pr.01.05)

📖 This is the source selection of minimum output frequency when control is by PID.

Group 11: Multi-function Input/Output Parameters for Extension Card

Make sure that the extension card is installed on the AC motor drive correctly before using group 11 parameters. See Appendix B for details.

11.00	Multi-function Output Terminal MO2/RA2
11.01	Multi-function Output Terminal MO3/RA3
11.02	Multi-function Output Terminal MO4/RA4
11.03	Multi-function Output Terminal MO5/RA5
11.04	Multi-function Output Terminal MO6/RA6
11.05	Multi-function Output Terminal MO7/RA7

Settings 0 to 21 Factory Setting: 0

Settings	Function	Description
0	No Function	
1	AC Drive Operational	Active when the drive is ready or RUN command is “ON”.
2	Master Frequency Attained	Active when the AC motor drive reaches the output frequency setting.
3	Zero Speed	Active when Command Frequency is lower than the Minimum Output Frequency.
4	Over-Torque Detection	Active as long as over-torque is detected. (Refer to Pr.06.03 ~ Pr.06.05)
5	Baseblock (B.B.) Indication	Active when the output of the AC motor drive is shut off during baseblock. Base block can be forced by Multi-function input (setting 09).
6	Low-Voltage Indication	Active when low voltage (Lv) is detected.
7	Operation Mode Indication	Active when operation command is controlled by external terminal.
8	Fault Indication	Active when a fault occurs (oc, ov, oH, oL, oL1, EF, cF3, HPF, ocA, ocd, ocn, GFF).
9	Desired Frequency Attained	Active when the desired frequency (Pr.03.02) is attained.

Settings	Function	Description
10	Terminal Count Value Attained	Active when the counter reaches Terminal Count Value.
11	Preliminary Count Value Attained	Active when the counter reaches Preliminary Count Value.
12	Over Voltage Stall supervision	Active when the Over Voltage Stall function operating
13	Over Current Stall supervision	Active when the Over Current Stall function operating
14	Heat Sink Overheat Warning	When heatsink overheats, it will signal to prevent OH turn off the drive. When it is higher than 85oC (185oF), it will be ON.
15	Over Voltage supervision	Active when the DC-BUS voltage exceeds level
16	PID supervision	Active when the PID function is operating
17	Forward command	Active when the direction command is FWD
18	Reverse command	Active when the direction command is REV
19	Zero Speed Output Signal	Active unless there is an output frequency present at terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3.
20	Communication Warning (FbE,Cexx, AoL2, AUE, SAvE)	Active when there is a Communication Warning
21	Brake Control (Desired Frequency Attained)	Active when output frequency ≥Pr.03.14. Deactivated when output frequency ≤Pr.03.15 after STOP command.

11.06	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI7)
11.07	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI8)
11.08	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI9)
11.09	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI10)
11.10	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI11)
11.11	Multi-function Input Terminal (MI12)

Settings 0 to 23 Factory Setting: 0

Settings	Function	Description
0	No Function	Any unused terminals should be programmed to 0 to insure they have no effect on operation.
1	Multi-Step Speed Command 1	These four inputs select the multi-speed defined by Pr.05.00 to Pr.05.14 as shown in the diagram at the end of the table in Pr.04.08. **NOTE: Pr.05.00 to Pr.05.14 can also be used to control output speed by programming the AC motor drive's internal PLC function. There are 17 step speed frequencies (including Master Frequency and Jog Frequency) to select for application.**
2	Multi-Step Speed Command 2	
3	Multi-Step Speed Command 3	
4	Multi-Step Speed Command 4	
5	External Reset	The External Reset has the same function as the Reset key on the Digital keypad. After faults such as O.H., O.C. and O.V. are cleared this input can be used to reset the drive.
6	Accel/Decel Inhibit	When the command is active, acceleration and deceleration is stopped and the AC motor drive maintains a constant speed.
7	Accel/Decel Time Selection Command	Used to select the one of 2 Accel/Decel Times (Pr.01.09 to Pr.01.12). See explanation at the end of this table.
8	Jog Operation Control	Parameter value 08 programs one of the Multi-function Input Terminals MI7 ~ MI12 (Pr.11.06~Pr.11.11) for Jog control. **NOTE: Programming for Jog operation by 08 can only be done while the motor is stopped. (Refer to parameter Pr.01.13~Pr.01.15)**

Settings	Function	Description
9	External Base Block (Refer to Pr.08.06)	Parameter value 09 programs a Multi-function Input Terminals for external Base Block control. **NOTE: When a Base-Block signal is received, the AC motor drive will block all output and the motor will free run. When base block control is deactivated, the AC drive will start its speed search function and synchronize with the motor speed, and then accelerate to Master Frequency.**
10	UP: Increase Master Frequency	Increase/decrease the Master Frequency each time an input is received or continuously when the input stays active. When both inputs are active at the same time, the Master Frequency increase/decrease is halted. Please refer to Pr.02.07, 02.08. This function is also called “motor potentiometer”.
11	DOWN: Decrease Master Frequency	
12	Counter Trigger	Parameter value 12 programs one of the Multi-function Input Terminals MI7 ~ MI12 (Pr.11.06~Pr.11.11) to increment the AC drive’s internal counter. When an input is received, the counter is incremented by 1.
13	Counter Reset	When active, the counter is reset and inhibited. To enable counting the input should be OFF. Refer to Pr.03.05 and 03.06.
14	External Fault	Parameter value 14 programs one of the Multi-function Input Terminals MI7 ~ MI12 (Pr.11.06~Pr.11.11) to be External Fault (E.F.) inputs.
15	PID function disabled	When an input ON with this setting is ON, the PID function will be disabled.
16	Output Shutoff Stop	AC motor drive will stop output and the motor free run if one of these settings is enabled. If the status of terminal is changed, AC motor drive will restart from 0Hz.
17	Parameter lock enable	When this setting is enabled, all parameters will be locked and write parameters is disabled.

Settings	Function	Description
18	Operation Command Selection (Pr.02.01 setting/external terminals)	ON: Operation command via Ext. Terminals OFF: Operation command via Pr.02.01 setting Pr.02.01 is disabled if this parameter value 18 is set. See the explanation below this table.
19	Operation Command Selection (Pr 02.01 setting/Digital Keypad)	ON: Operation command via Digital Keypad OFF: Operation command via Pr.02.01 setting Pr.02.01 is disabled if this parameter value 19 is set. See the explanation below this table.
20	Operation Command Selection (Pr 02.01 setting/ Communication)	ON: Operation command via Communication OFF: Operation command via Pr.02.01 setting Pr.02.01 is disabled if this parameter value 20 is set. See the explanation below this table.
21	Forward/Reverse	This function has top priority to set the direction for running (If "Pr.02.04=0")
22	Source of second frequency command enabled	Used to select the first/second frequency command source. Refer to Pr.02.00 and 02.09. ON: 2nd Frequency command source OFF: 1st Frequency command source
23	Run/Stop PLC Program	ON: Run PLC Program OFF: Stop PLC Program When AC motor drive is in STOP mode and this function is enabled, it will display PLC1 in the PLC page and execute PLC program. When this function is disabled, it will display PLC0 in the PLC page and stop executing PLC program. The motor will be stopped by Pr.02.02. When operation command source is external terminal, the keypad cannot be used to change PLC status. And this function will be invalid when AC Motor drive is in PLC2 status.

Settings	Function	Description
24	Download/Execute/ Monitor PLC Program (PLC2)	When AC motor drive is in STOP mode and this function is enabled, it will display PLC2 in the PLC page and you can download/execute/monitor PLC. When this function is disabled, it will display PLC0 in the PLC page and stop executing PLC program. The motor will be stopped by Pr.02.02. When operation command source is external terminal, the keypad cannot be used to change PLC status. And this function will be invalid when the AC Motor drive is in PLC1 status.

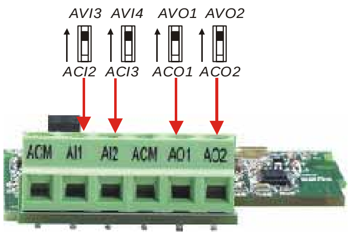
Group 12: Analog Input/Output Parameters for Extension Card

Make sure that the extension card is installed on the AC motor drive correctly before using group 12 parameters. See Appendix B for details.

12.00	AI1 Function Selection	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Disabled
	1	Source of the 1st frequency
	2	Source of the 2nd frequency
	3	PID Set Point (PID enable)
	4	Positive PID feedback
	5	Negative PID feedback

12.01	AI1 Analog Signal Mode	
		Factory Setting: 1
Settings	0	ACI2 analog current (0.0 ~ 20.0mA)
	1	AVI3 analog voltage (0.0 ~ 10.0V)

📖 Besides parameters settings, the voltage/current mode should be used with the switch.



12.02	Min. AVI3 Input Voltage	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 0.0

12.03	Min. AVI3 Scale Percentage	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0

12.04	Max. AVI3 Input Voltage	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 10.0

12.05	Max. AVI3 Scale Percentage	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0

12.06	Min. ACI2 Input Current	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 20.0mA	Factory Setting: 4.0

12.07	Min. ACI2 Scale Percentage	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0

12.08	Max. ACI2 Input Current	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 20.0mA	Factory Setting: 20.0

12.09	Max. ACI2 Scale Percentage	Unit: 0.1
	Settings 0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0

12.10 AI2 Function Selection

Factory Setting: 0

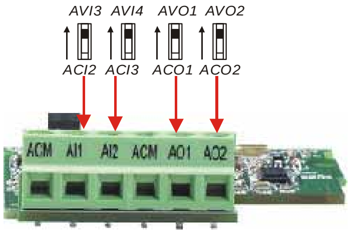
Settings		
	0	Disabled
	1	Source of the 1st frequency
	2	Source of the 2nd frequency
	3	PID Set Point (PID enable)
	4	Positive PID feedback
	5	Negative PID feedback

12.11 AI2 Analog Signal Mode

Factory Setting: 1

Settings		
	0	ACI3 analog current (0.0 ~ 20.0mA)
	1	AVI4 analog voltage (0.0 ~ 10.0V)

📖 Besides parameters settings, the voltage/current mode should be used with the switch.



12.12	Min. AVI4 Input Voltage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 0.0

12.13	Min. AVI4 Scale Percentage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0

12.14	Max. AVI4 Input Voltage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 10.0V	Factory Setting: 10.0

12.15	Max. AVI4 Scale Percentage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0

12.16	Min. ACI3 Input Current		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 20.0mA	Factory Setting: 4.0

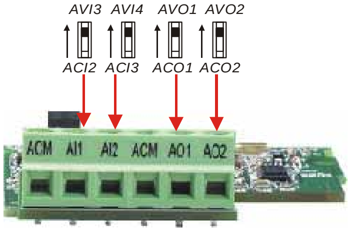
12.17	Min. ACI3 Scale Percentage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 0.0

12.18	Max. ACI3 Input Current		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 20.0mA	Factory Setting: 20.0

12.19	Max. ACI3 Scale Percentage		Unit: 0.1
	Settings	0.0 to 100.0%	Factory Setting: 100.0

12.20	AO1 Terminal Analog Signal Mode		
			Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	AVO1	
	1	ACO1 (analog current 0.0 to 20.0mA)	
	2	ACO1 (analog current 4.0 to 20.0mA)	

📖 Besides parameter setting, the voltage/current mode should be used with the switch.



12.21	AO1 Analog Output Signal		
			Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Analog Frequency	
	1	Analog Current (0 to 250% rated current)	

📖 This parameter is used to choose analog frequency (0-+10Vdc) or analog current (4-20mA) to correspond to the AC motor drive's output frequency or current.

12.22	AO1 Analog Output Gain	Unit: 1
Settings	1 to 200%	Factory Setting: 100

📖 This parameter is used to set the analog output voltage range.

📖 When Pr.12.21 is set to 0, analog output voltage corresponds to the AC motor drive's output frequency. When Pr.12.22 is set to 100, the max. output frequency (Pr.01.00) setting corresponds to the AFM output (+10VDC or 20mA)

📖 When Pr.12.21 is set to 1, analog output voltage corresponds to the AC motor drive's output current. When Pr.12.22 is set to 100, the 2.5 X rated current corresponds to the AFM output (+10VDC or 20mA)

NOTE

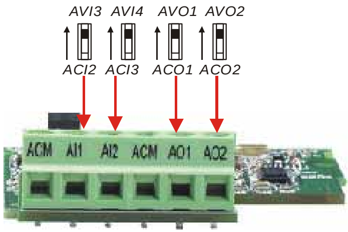
If the scale of the voltmeter is less than 10V, refer to following formula to set Pr.12.22:

Pr.12.22 = [(full scale voltage)/10]*100%.

Example: When using voltmeter with full scale (5V), Pr.12.22 should be set to 5/10*100%=50%. If Pr.12.21 is set to 0, the output voltage will correspond to the max. output frequency.

12.23	AO2Terminal Analog Signal Mode	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	AVO2
	1	ACO2 (analog current 0.0 to 20.0mA)
	2	ACO2 (analog current 4.0 to 20.0mA)

📖 Besides parameter setting, the voltage/current mode should be used with the switch.



12.24	AO2 Analog Output Signal	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Analog Frequency
	1	Analog Current (0 to 250% rated current)

12.25	AO2 Analog Output Gain	Unit: 1
Settings	1 to 200%	Factory Setting: 100

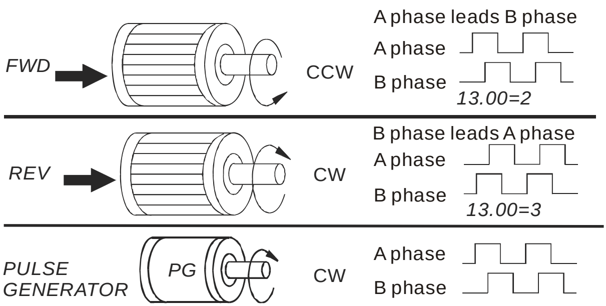
📖 Setting method for the AO2 is the same as the AO1.

Group 13: PG function Parameters for Extension Card

Make sure that the extension card is installed on the AC motor drive correctly before using group 12 parameters. See Appendix B for details.

13.00	PG Input	
		Factory Setting: 0
Settings	0	Disable PG
	1	Single phase
	2	Forward/Counterclockwise rotation
	3	Reverse/Clockwise rotation

📖 The relationship between the motor rotation and PG input is illustrated below:



13.01	PG Pulse Range	Unit: 1
Settings	1 to 20000	Factory Setting: 600

📖 A Pulse Generator (PG) is used as a sensor that provides a feedback signal of the motor speed. This parameter defines the number of pulses for each cycle of the PG control.

13.02	Motor Pole Number	Unit: 1
Settings	2 to 10	Factory Setting: 4

📖 The pole number should be even (can't be odd).

13.03	⁄⁄ Proportional Gain (P)	Unit: 0.01
Settings	0.0 to 10.0	Factory Setting: 1.0

📖 This parameter specifies proportional control and associated gain (P), and is used for speed control with PG feedback.

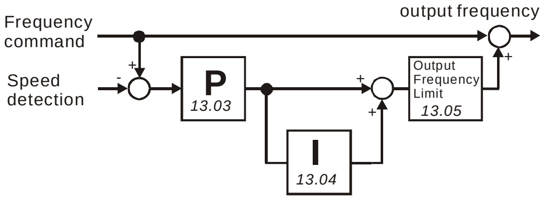
13.04	⁄⁄ Integral Gain (I)	Unit: 0.01

Settings	0.00 to 100.00 sec	Factory Setting: 1.00
	0.00 Disable	

📖 This parameter specifies integral control and associated gain (I), and is used for speed control with PG feedback.

13.05	✎Speed Control Output Frequency Limit	Unit: 0.01
Settings	0.00 to 100.00Hz	Factory Setting: 10.00

📖 This parameter limits the amount of correction by the PI control on the output frequency when controlling speed via PG feedback. It can limit the maximum output frequency.



13.06	✎Speed Feedback Display Filter	Unit: 1
Settings	0 to 9999 (*2ms)	Factory Setting: 500

📖 When Pr.0.04 is set to 14, its display will be updated regularly. This update time is set by Pr.13.06.

13.09	✎Speed Feedback Filter	Unit: 1
Settings	0 to 9999 (*2ms)	Factory Setting: 16

📖 This parameter is the filter time from the speed feedback to the PG card.

13.07	✎Time for Feedback Signal Fault	Unit: 0.1
Settings	0.1 to 10.0 sec	Factory Setting: 1.0
	0.0 Disabled	

📖 This parameter defines the time during which the PID feedback must be abnormal before a warning (see Pr.13.08) is given. It also can be modified according to the system feedback signal time.

📖 If this parameter is set to 0.0, the system would not detect any abnormality signal.

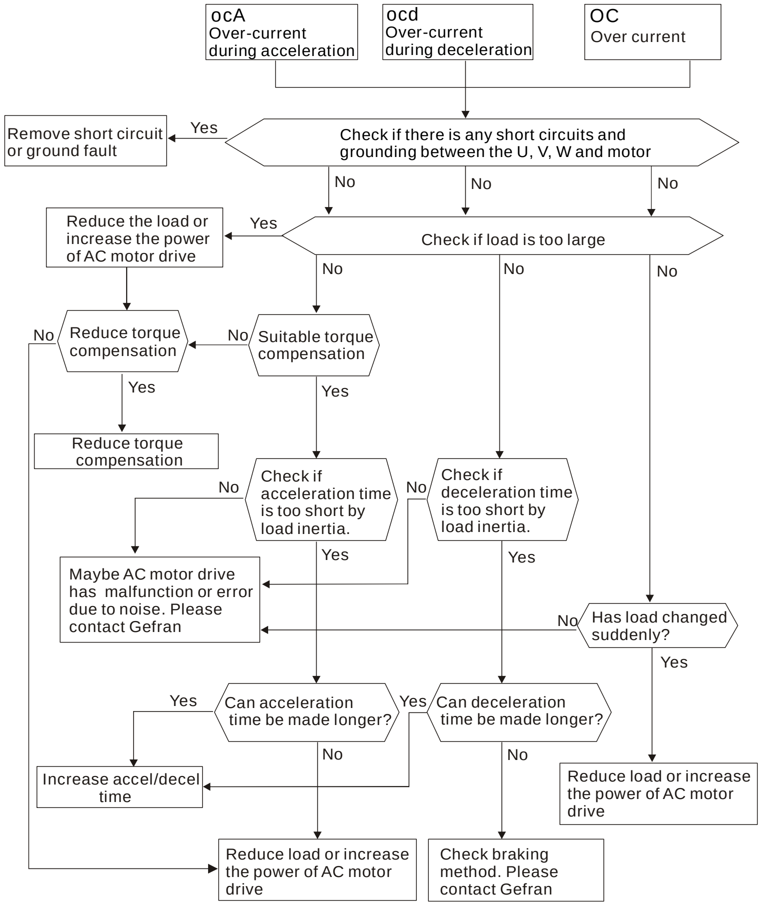
13.08	✎Treatment of the Feedback Signal Fault	
		Factory Setting: 1
Settings	0	Warn and RAMP to stop
	1	Warn and COAST to stop
	2	Warn and keep operating

📖 AC motor drive action when the feedback signals (analog PID feedback or PG (encoder) feedback) are abnormal.

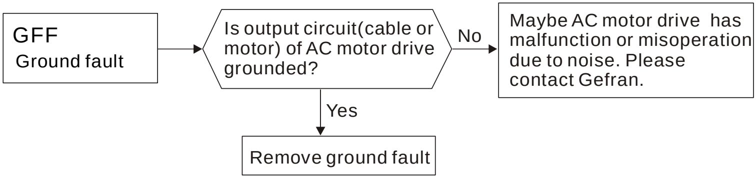
13.10	Source of the High-speed Counter	
		Factory Setting: Read only
Settings	0	PG card
	1	PLC

Chapter 5 Troubleshooting

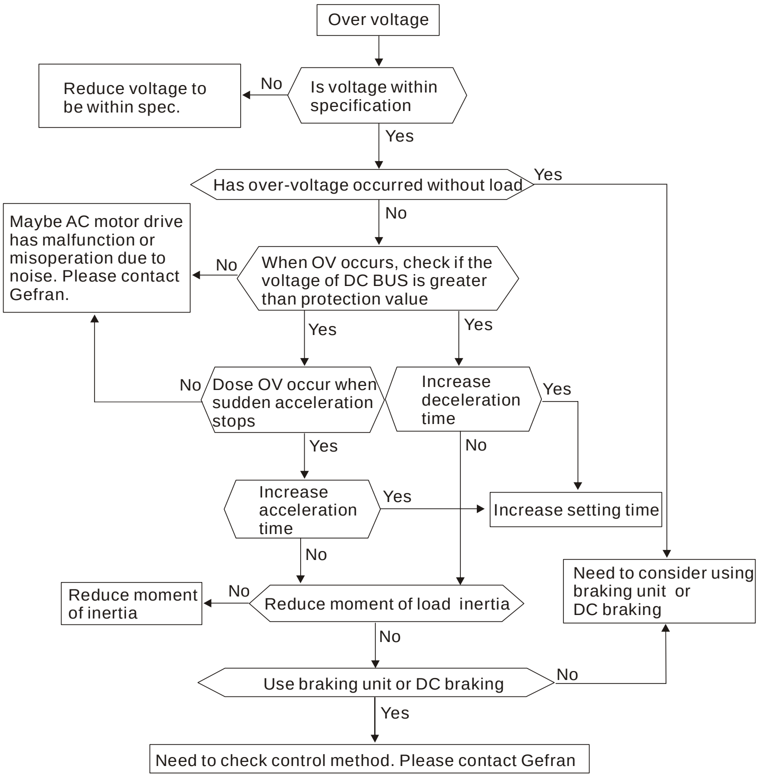
5.1 Over Current (OC)



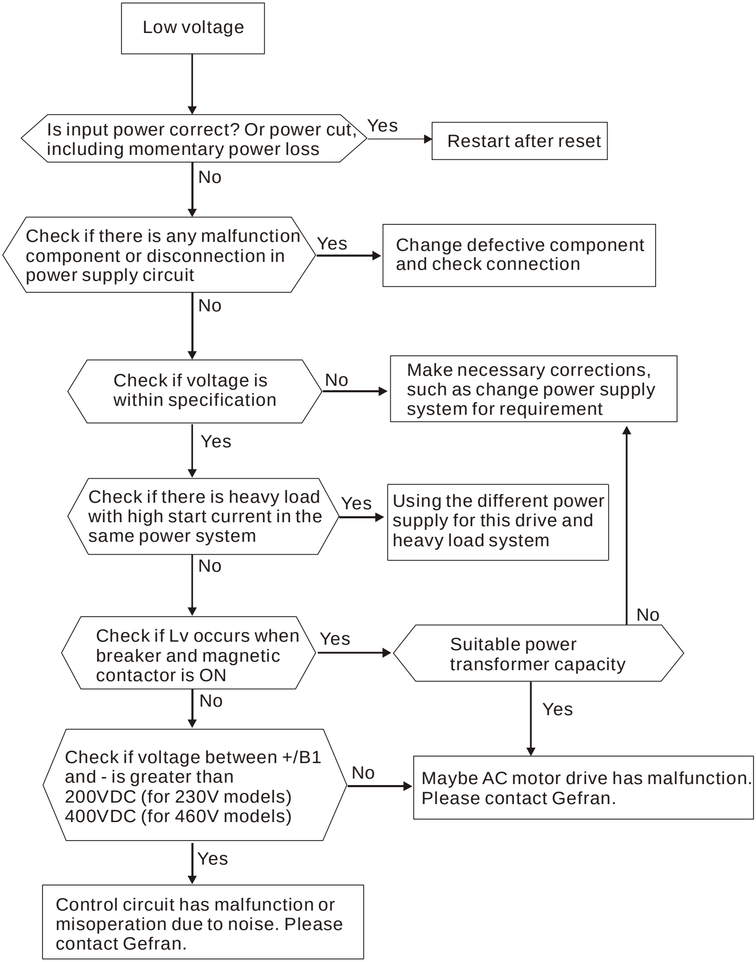
5.2 Ground Fault



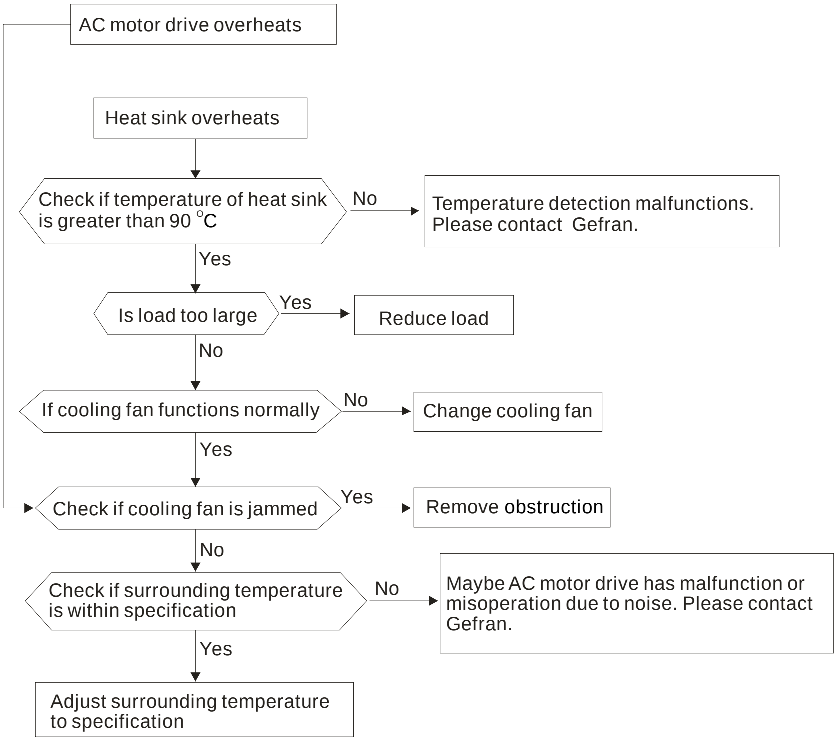
5.3 Over Voltage (OV)



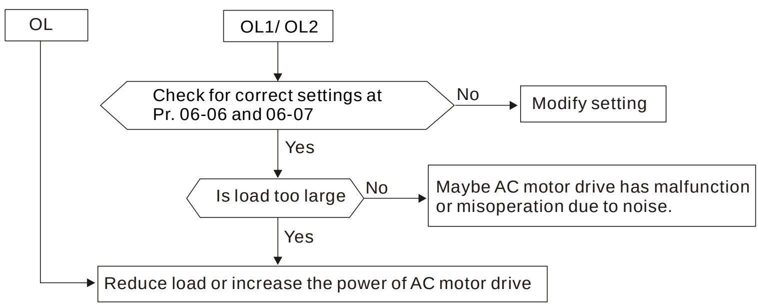
5.4 Low Voltage (Lv)



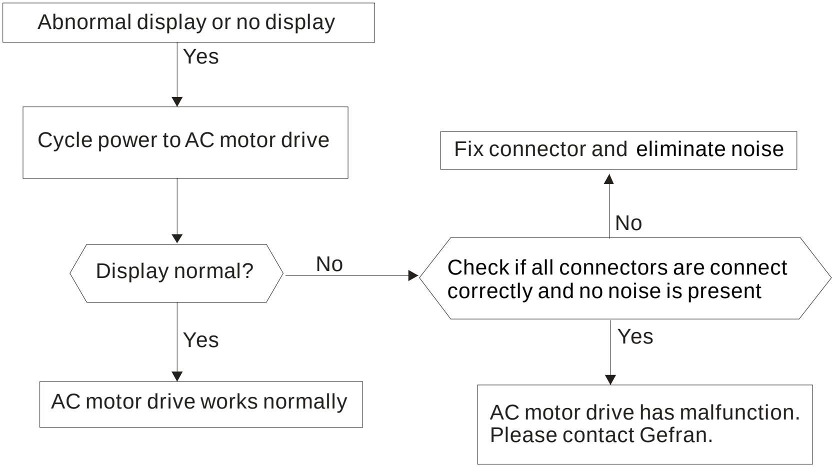
5.5 Over Heat (OH)



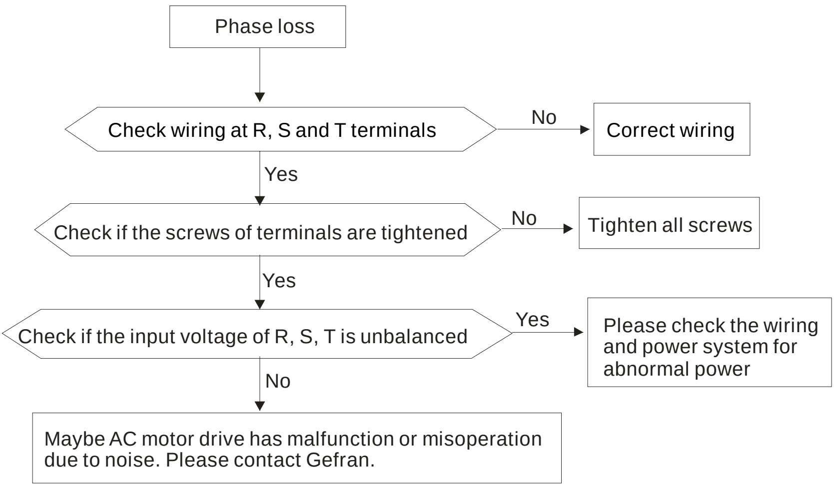
5.6 Overload



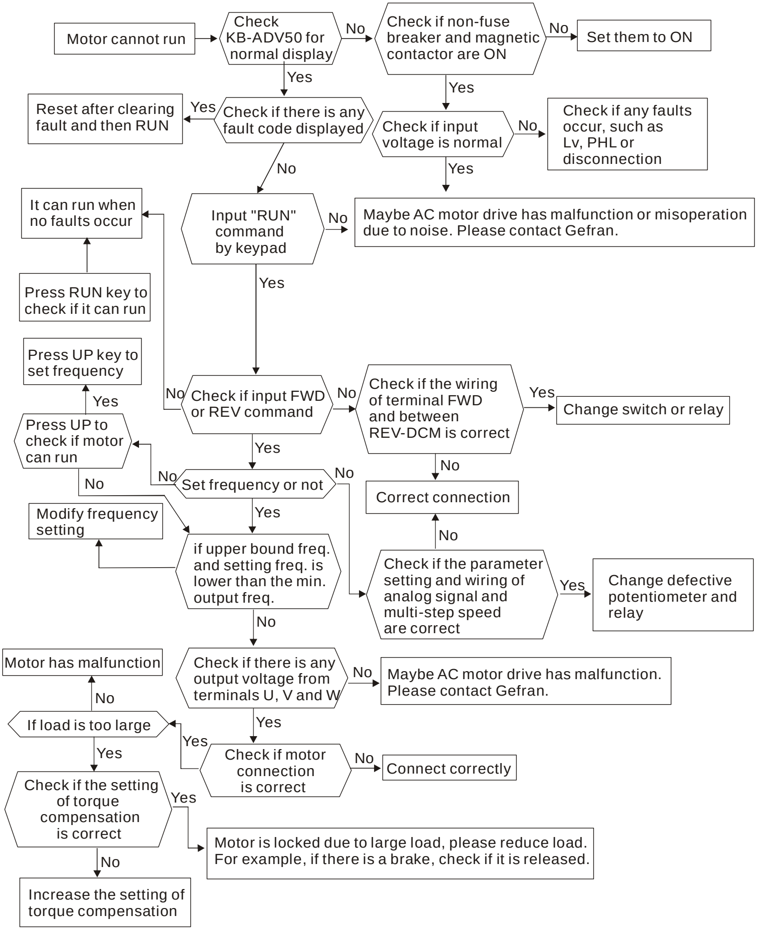
5.7 Keypad Display is Abnormal



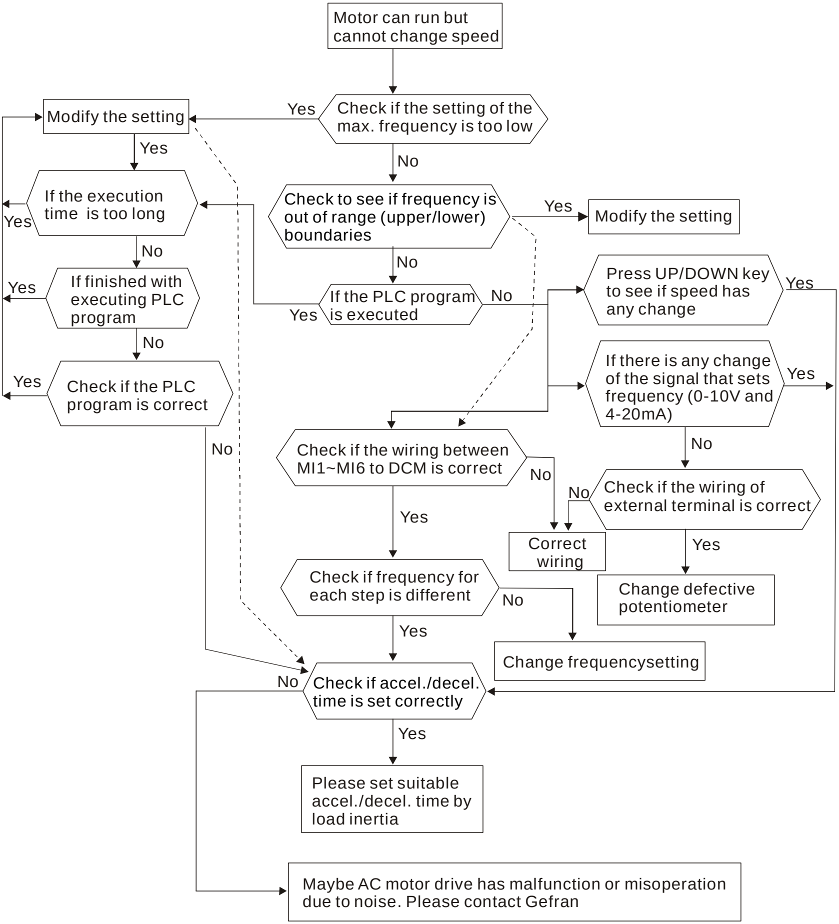
5.8 Phase Loss (PHL)



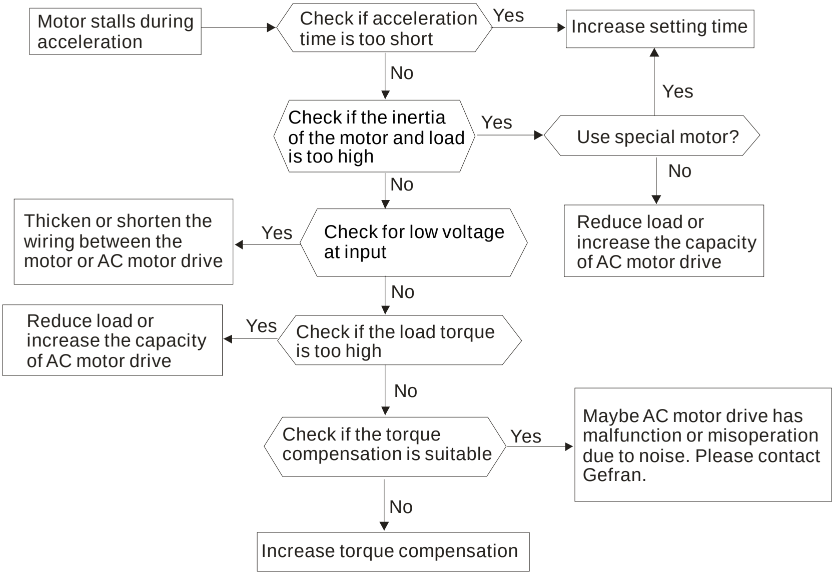
5.9 Motor cannot Run



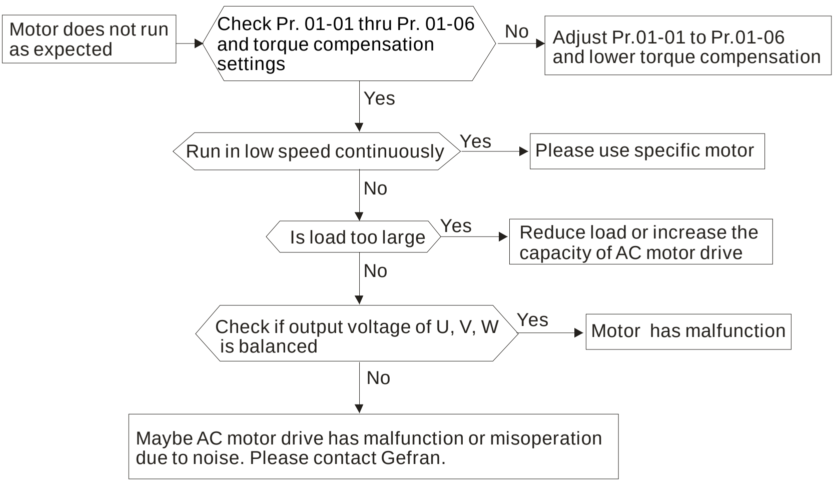
5.10 Motor Speed cannot be Changed



5.11 Motor Stalls during Acceleration



5.12 The Motor does not Run as Expected



5.13 Electromagnetic/Induction Noise

Many sources of noise surround AC motor drives and penetrate it by radiation or conduction. It may cause malfunctioning of the control circuits and even damage the AC motor drive. Of course, there are solutions to increase the noise tolerance of an AC motor drive. But this has its limits. Therefore, solving it from the outside as follows will be the best.

1. Add surge suppressor on the relays and contacts to suppress switching surges.
2. Shorten the wiring length of the control circuit or serial communication and keep them separated from the power circuit wiring.
3. Comply with the wiring regulations by using shielded wires and isolation amplifiers for long length.
4. The grounding terminal should comply with the local regulations and be grounded independently, i.e. not to have common ground with electric welding machines and other power equipment.
5. Connect a noise filter at the mains input terminal of the AC motor drive to filter noise from the power circuit.

In short, solutions for electromagnetic noise exist of “no product”(disconnect disturbing equipment), “no spread”(limit emission for disturbing equipment) and “no receive”(enhance immunity).

5.14 Environmental Condition

Since the AC motor drive is an electronic device, you should comply with the environmental conditions. Here are some remedial measures if necessary.

1. To prevent vibration, the use of anti-vibration dampers is the last choice. Vibrations must be within the specification. Vibration causes mechanical stress and it should not occur frequently, continuously or repeatedly to prevent damage to the AC motor drive.
2. Store the AC motor drive in a clean and dry location, free from corrosive fumes/dust to prevent corrosion and poor contacts. Poor insulation in a humid location can cause short-circuits. If necessary, install the AC motor drive in a dust-proof and painted enclosure and in particular situations, use a completely sealed enclosure.
3. The ambient temperature should be within the specification. Too high or too low temperature will affect the lifetime and reliability. For semiconductor components, damage will occur once any specification is out of range. Therefore, it is necessary to periodically check air quality and the cooling fan and provide extra cooling of necessary. In addition, the microcomputer may not work in extremely low temperatures, making cabinet heating necessary.
4. Store within a relative humidity range of 0% to 90% and non-condensing environment. Use an air conditioner and/or exsiccator.

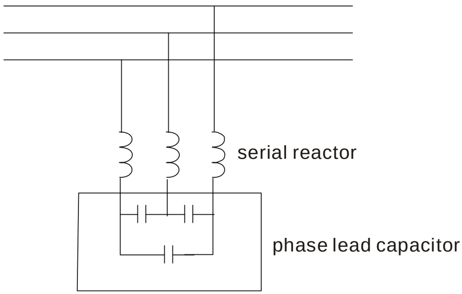
5.15 Affecting Other Machines

An AC motor drive may affect the operation of other machines due to many reasons. Some solutions are:

- High Harmonics at Power Side

High harmonics at power side during running can be improved by:

1. Separate the power system: use a transformer for AC motor drive.
2. Use a reactor at the power input terminal of the AC motor drive.
3. If phase lead capacitors are used (never on the AC motor drive output!!), use serial reactors to prevent damage to the capacitors damage from high harmonics.



- Motor Temperature Rises

When the motor is a standard induction motor with fan, the cooling will be bad at low speeds, causing the motor to overheat. Besides, high harmonics at the output increases copper and core losses. The following measures should be used depending on load and operation range.

1. Use a motor with independent ventilation (forced external cooling) or increase the motor rated power.
2. Use a special inverter duty motor.
3. Do NOT run at low speeds for long time.

Chapter 6 Fault Code Information and Maintenance

6.1 Fault Code Information

The AC motor drive has a comprehensive fault diagnostic system that includes several different alarms and fault messages. Once a fault is detected, the corresponding protective functions will be activated. The following faults are displayed as shown on the AC motor drive digital keypad display. The five most recent faults can be read from the digital keypad or communication.

NOTE

Wait 5 seconds after a fault has been cleared before performing reset via keypad of input terminal.

6.1.1 Common Problems and Solutions

Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
oc	**Over current** Abnormal increase in current.	1. Check if motor power corresponds with the AC motor drive output power. 2. Check the wiring connections to U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 for possible short circuits. 3. Check the wiring connections between the AC motor drive and motor for possible short circuits, also to ground. 4. Check for loose contacts between AC motor drive and motor. 5. Increase the Acceleration Time. 6. Check for possible excessive loading conditions at the motor. 7. If there are still any abnormal conditions when operating the AC motor drive after a short-circuit is removed and the other points above are checked, it should be sent back to manufacturer.
ou	**Over voltage** The DC bus voltage has exceeded its maximum allowable value.	1. Check if the input voltage falls within the rated AC motor drive input voltage range. 2. Check for possible voltage transients. 3. DC-bus over-voltage may also be caused by motor regeneration. Either increase the Decel. Time or add an optional brake resistor (and brake unit). 4. Check whether the required braking power is within the specified limits.

Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
oH1 oH2	**Overheating** Heat sink temperature too high	1. Ensure that the ambient temperature falls within the specified temperature range. 2. Make sure that the ventilation holes are not obstructed. 3. Remove any foreign objects from the heatsinks and check for possible dirty heat sink fins. 4. Check the fan and clean it. 5. Provide enough spacing for adequate ventilation. (See chapter 1)
Lv	**Low voltage** The AC motor drive detects that the DC bus voltage has fallen below its minimum value.	1. Check whether the input voltage falls within the AC motor drive rated input voltage range. 2. Check for abnormal load in motor. 3. Check for correct wiring of input power to R-S-T (for 3-phase models) without phase loss.
oL	**Overload** The AC motor drive detects excessive drive output current. **NOTE: The AC motor drive can withstand up to 150% of the rated current for a maximum of 60 seconds.**	1. Check whether the motor is overloaded. 2. Reduce torque compensation setting in Pr.07.02. 3. Use the next higher power AC motor drive model.
oL1	**Overload 1** Internal electronic overload trip	1. Check for possible motor overload. 2. Check electronic thermal overload setting. 3. Use a higher power motor. 4. Reduce the current level so that the drive output current does not exceed the value set by the Motor Rated Current Pr.07.00.
oL2	**Overload 2** Motor overload.	1. Reduce the motor load. 2. Adjust the over-torque detection setting to an appropriate setting (Pr.06.03 to Pr.06.05).
HPF1	**CC (current clamp)**	Please contact Gefran "Drive & Motion Control Unit" Technical Assistance
HPF2	**OV hardware error**	
HPF3	**GFF hardware error**	
HPF4	**OC hardware error**	
bb	**External Base Block.** (Refer to Pr. 08.07)	1. When the external input terminal (B.B) is active, the AC motor drive output will be turned off. 2. Deactivate the external input terminal (B.B) to operate the AC motor drive again.

Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
ocA	**Over-current during acceleration**	1. Short-circuit at motor output: Check for possible poor insulation at the output lines. 2. Torque boost too high: Decrease the torque compensation setting in Pr.07.02. 3. Acceleration Time too short: Increase the Acceleration Time. 4. AC motor drive output power is too small: Replace the AC motor drive with the next higher power model.
ocd	**Over-current during deceleration**	1. Short-circuit at motor output: Check for possible poor insulation at the output line. 2. Deceleration Time too short: Increase the Deceleration Time. 3. AC motor drive output power is too small: Replace the AC motor drive with the next higher power model.
ocn	**Over-current during constant speed operation**	1. Short-circuit at motor output: Check for possible poor insulation at the output line. 2. Sudden increase in motor loading: Check for possible motor stall. 3. AC motor drive output power is too small: Replace the AC motor drive with the next higher power model.
EF	**External Fault**	1. When multi-function input terminals (MI3-MI9) are set to external fault, the AC motor drive stops output U, V and W. 2. Give RESET command after fault has been cleared.
cF1.0	**Internal EEPROM can not be programmed.**	Please contact Gefran “Drive & Motion Control Unit” Technical Assistance
cF1.1	**Internal EEPROM can not be programmed.**	Please contact Gefran “Drive & Motion Control Unit” Technical Assistance
cF2.0	**Internal EEPROM can not be read.**	1. Press RESET key to set all parameters to factory setting. 2. Please contact Gefran Technical Assistance
cF2.1	**Internal EEPROM can not be read.**	1. Press RESET key to set all parameters to factory setting. 2. Please contact Gefran Technical Assistance
cF3.0	**U-phase error**	Please contact Gefran “Drive & Motion Control Unit” Technical Assistance
cF3.1	**V-phase error**	
cF3.2	**W-phase error**	
cF3.3	**OV or LV**	
cF3.4 cF3.5	**Temperature sensor error**	

Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
GFF	**Ground fault**	When (one of) the output terminal(s) is grounded, short circuit current is more than 50% of AC motor drive rated current, the AC motor drive power module may be damaged. **NOTE: The short circuit protection is provided for AC motor drive protection, not for protection of the user.** 1. Check whether the IGBT power module is damaged. 2. Check for possible poor insulation at the output line.
cFA	**Auto accel/decel failure**	1. Check if the motor is suitable for operation by AC motor drive. 2. Check if the regenerative energy is too large. 3. Load may have changed suddenly.
cE--	**Communication Error**	1. Check the RS485 connection between the AC motor drive and RS485 master for loose wires and wiring to correct pins. 2. Check if the communication protocol, address, transmission speed, etc. are properly set. 3. Use the correct checksum calculation. 4. Please refer to group 9 in the chapter 5 for detail information.
codE	**Software protection failure**	Please contact Gefran Technical Assistance
AErr	**Analog signal error**	Check the wiring of ACI
FbE	**PID feedback signal error**	1. Check parameter settings (Pr.10.01) and AVI/ACI wiring. 2. Check for possible fault between system response time and the PID feedback signal detection time (Pr.10.08)
PHL	**Phase Loss**	Check input phase wiring for loose contacts.
AUE	**Auto Tuning Error**	1. Check cabling between drive and motor 2. Retry again
CP10	**Communication time-out error on the control board or power board**	1. Press RESET key to set all parameters to factory setting. 2. Please contact Gefran Technical Assistance
PtC1 PtC2	**Motor overheat protection**	1. Check if the motor is overheat 2. Check Pr.07.12 to Pr.07.17 settings
PGEr	**PG signal error**	1. Check the wiring of PG card 2. Try another PG card

6.1.2 Reset

There are three methods to reset the AC motor drive after solving the fault:

1. Press key on keypad.
2. Set external terminal to “RESET” (set one of Pr.04.05~Pr.04.08 to 05) and then set to be ON.
3. Send “RESET” command by communication.

NOTE

Make sure that RUN command or signal is OFF before executing RESET to prevent damage or personal injury due to immediate operation.

6.2 Maintenance and Inspections

Modern AC motor drives are based on solid-state electronics technology. Preventive maintenance is required to keep the AC motor drive in its optimal condition, and to ensure a long life. It is recommended to have a qualified technician perform a check-up of the AC motor drive regularly.

Daily Inspection:

Basic check-up items to detect if there were any abnormalities during operation are:

1. Whether the motors are operating as expected.
2. Whether the installation environment is abnormal.
3. Whether the cooling system is operating as expected.
4. Whether any irregular vibration or sound occurred during operation.
5. Whether the motors are overheating during operation.
6. Always check the input voltage of the AC drive with a Voltmeter.

Periodic Inspection:

Before the check-up, always turn off the AC input power and remove the cover. Wait at least 10 minutes after all display lamps have gone out, and then confirm that the capacitors have fully discharged by measuring the voltage between ⊕ ~ ⊖. It should be less than 25VDC.

DANGER!

1. Disconnect AC power before processing!
2. Only qualified personnel can install, wire and maintain AC motor drives. Please take off any metal objects, such as watches and rings, before operation. And only insulated tools are allowed.
3. Never reassemble internal components or wiring.
4. Prevent static electricity.

Periodical Maintenance

Ambient environment

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
Check the ambient temperature, humidity, vibration and see if there are any dust, gas, oil or water drops	Visual inspection and measurement with equipment with standard specification	○		
Check if there are any dangerous objects in the environment	Visual inspection	○		

Voltage

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
Check if the voltage of main circuit and control circuit is correct	Measure with multimeter with standard specification	○		

Keypad

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
Is the display clear for reading?	Visual inspection	○		
Any missing characters?	Visual inspection	○		

Mechanical parts

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any abnormal sound or vibration	Visual and aural inspection		○	
If there are any loose screws	Tighten the screws		○	
If any part is deformed or damaged	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any color change by overheating	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any dust or dirt	Visual inspection		○	

Main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there are any loose or missing screws	Tighten or replace the screw	○		
If machine or insulator is deformed, cracked, damaged or with changed color change due to overheating or ageing	Visual inspection **NOTE: Please ignore the color change of copper plate**		○	
If there is any dust or dirt	Visual inspection		○	

Terminals and wiring of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If the wiring shows change of color change or deformation due to overheat	Visual inspection		○	
If the insulation of wiring is damaged or the color has changed	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any damage	Visual inspection		○	

DC capacity of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any leakage of liquid, change of color, cracks or deformation	Visual inspection	○		
Measure static capacity when required	Static capacity $\geq$ initial value X 0.85		○	

Resistor of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any peculiar smell or insulator cracks due to overheating	Visual inspection, smell		○	
If there is any disconnection	Visual inspection or measure with multimeter after removing wiring between +/B1 ~ - Resistor value should be within $\pm$10%		○	

Transformer and reactor of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any abnormal vibration or peculiar smell	Visual, aural inspection and smell	○		

Magnetic contactor and relay of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there are any loose screws	Visual and aural inspection. Tighten screw if necessary.	○		
If the contact works correctly	Visual inspection	○		

Printed circuit board and connector of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there are any loose screws and connectors	Tighten the screws and press the connectors firmly in place.		○	
If there is any peculiar smell and color change	Visual inspection and smell		○	
If there is any crack, damage, deformation or corrosion	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any leaked liquid or deformation in capacitors	Visual inspection		○	

Cooling fan of cooling system

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any abnormal sound or vibration	Visual, aural inspection and turn the fan with hand (turn off the power before operation) to see if it rotates smoothly			○
If there is any loose screw	Tighten the screw			○
If there is any change of color due to overheating	Change fan			○

Ventilation channel of cooling system

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any obstruction in the heat sink, air intake or air outlet	Visual inspection		○	

Appendix A Specifications

There are 230V and 460V models in the ADV50 series. For 0.5 to 3HP of the 230V models, there are 1-phase/3-phase models. Refer to following specifications for details.

Voltage Class		230V Class						
Model Number ADV50--XXXX		1004	1007	1015 2015	2022	2037	3055	3075
Max. Applicable Motor Output (kW)		0.4	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5
Max. Applicable Motor Output (hp)		0.5	1.0	2.0	3.0	5.0	7.5	10
Output Rating	Rated Output Capacity (kVA)	1.0	1.6	2.9	4.2	6.5	9.5	12.5
	Rated Output Current (A)	2.5	4.2	7.5	11.0	17	25	33
	Maximum Output Voltage (V)	3-Phase Proportional to Input Voltage						
	Output Frequency (Hz)	0.1~600 Hz						
	Carrier Frequency (kHz)	1-15						
Input Rating	Rated Input Current (A)	Single/3-phase				3-phase		
		6.5/2.7	9.5/5.1	15.7/9	24/15	20.6	26	34
	Rated Voltage/Frequency	Single/3-phase 200-240 V, 50/60Hz				3-phase 200-240V, 50/60Hz		
	Voltage Tolerance	± 10%(180~264 V)						
	Frequency Tolerance	± 5%(47~63 Hz)						
Cooling Method		Natural Cooling			Fan Cooling			
Weight (kg)		1.1	1.1	*1.2/1.9	1.9	1.9	3.5	3.5

Voltage Class		400 V - 460 V Class (Power ratings at 400 V)							
Model Number ADV50--XXXX		1004	1007	1015	2022	2037	3055	3075	3110
Max. Applicable Motor Output (kW)		0.4	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5	11
Max. Applicable Motor Output (hp)		0.5	1.0	2.0	3.0	5.0	7.5	10	15
Output Rating	Rated Output Capacity (kVA)	1.2	2.0	3.3	4.4	6.8	9.9	13.7	18.3
	Rated Output Current (A)	1.5	2.5	4.2	5.5	8.2	13	18	24
	Maximum Output Voltage (V)	3-Phase Proportional to Input Voltage							
	Output Frequency (Hz)	0.1~600 Hz							
	Carrier Frequency (kHz)	1-15							
Input Rating	Rated Input Current (A)	3-phase							
		1.9	3.2	4.3	7.1	11.2	14	19	26
	Rated Voltage/Frequency	3-phase, 380-480V, 50/60Hz							
	Voltage Tolerance	± 10%(342~528V)							
	Frequency Tolerance	± 5%(47~63Hz)							
Cooling Method		Natural Cooling		Fan Cooling					
Weight (kg)		1.2	1.2	1.2	1.9	1.9	4.2	4.2	4.2

General Specifications			
Control Characteristics	Control System		V/f or sensorless vector control with SPWM modulation (Sinusoidal Pulse Width Modulation)
	Frequency Setting Resolution		0.01Hz
	Output Frequency Resolution		0.01Hz
	Torque Characteristics		Including the auto-torque/auto-slip compensation; starting torque can be 150% at 3.0Hz
	Overload Endurance		150% of rated current for 1 minute
	Skip Frequency		Three zones, setting range 0.1-600Hz
	Accel/Decel Time		0.1 to 600 seconds (2 Independent settings for Accel/Decel time)
	Stall Prevention Level		Setting 20 to 250% of rated current
	DC Braking		Operation frequency 0.1-600.0Hz, output 0-100% rated current Start time 0-60 seconds, stop time 0-60 seconds
	Regenerated Braking Torque		Approx. 20% (up to 125% possible with optional brake resistor or externally mounted brake unit, 3-15hp (2.2-11kW) models have brake chopper built-in)
	V/f Pattern		Adjustable V/f pattern
Operating Characteristics	Frequency Setting	Keypad	Setting by ▲ ▼
		External Signal	Potentiometer-5kΩ/0.5W, 0 to +10VDC, 4 to 20mA, RS-485 interface; Multi-function Inputs 3 to 9 (15 steps, Jog, motopotentiometer)
	Operation Setting Signal	Keypad	Set by RUN and STOP
		External Signal	2 wires/3 wires ((MI1, MI2, MI3)), JOG operation, RS-485 serial interface (MODBUS), programmable logic controller
	Multi-function Input Signal		Multi-step selection 0 to 15, Jog, accel/decel inhibit, 2 accel/decel switches, counter, external Base Block, ACI/AVI selections, driver reset, UP/DOWN key settings, NPN/PNP input selection
	Multi-function Output Indication		AC drive operating, frequency attained, zero speed, Base Block, fault indication, overheat alarm, emergency stop and status selections of input terminals
	Analog Output Signal		Output frequency/current
Alarm Output Contact			Contact will be On when drive malfunctions (1 Form C/change-over contact and 1 open collector output) for standard type)
Operation Functions			Built-in PLC, AVR, accel/decel S-Curve, over-voltage/over-current stall prevention, 5 fault records, reverse inhibition, momentary power loss restart, DC braking, auto torque/slip compensation, auto tuning, adjustable carrier frequency, output frequency limits, parameter lock/reset, vector control, PID control, external counter, MODBUS communication, abnormal reset, abnormal re-start, power-saving, fan control, sleep/wake frequency, 1st/2nd frequency source selections, 1st/2nd frequency source combination, NPN/PNP selection
Protection Functions			Over voltage, over current, under voltage, external fault, overload, ground fault, overheating, electronic thermal, IGBT short circuit, PTC
Display Keypad (optional)			6-key, 7-segment LED with 4-digit, 5 status LEDs, master frequency, output frequency, output current, custom units, parameter values for setup and lock, faults, RUN, STOP, RESET, FWD/REV, PLC
Built-in EMI Filter			For 230V 1-phase and 400-460V 3-phase models.
Environmental Conditions	Enclosure Rating		IP20
	Pollution Degree		2
	Installation Location		Altitude 1,000 m or lower, keep from corrosive gasses, liquid and dust
	Ambient Temperature		-10^{o}C to 50^{o}C (40^{o}C for side-by-side mounting) Non-Condensing and not frozen

General Specifications		
	Storage/ Transportation Temperature	-20 °C to 60 °C
	Ambient Humidity	Below 90% RH (non-condensing)
	Vibration	9.80665m/s^2 (1G) less than 20Hz, 5.88m/s^2 (0.6G) at 20 to 50Hz
Approvals		CE UL cULus

This page intentionally left blank

B.1 All Brake Resistors & Brake Units Used in AC Motor Drives

Note: Please only use GEFRAN resistors and recommended values. Other resistors and values will void Gefran's warranty. Please contact your nearest Gefran representative for use of special resistors. The brake unit should be at least 10 cm away from AC motor drive to avoid possible interference. Refer to the "Brake unit Module User Manual" for further details.

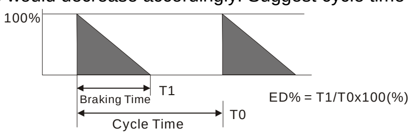
Voltage	Applicable Motor		AC Drive Part No.	Full Load Torque KG-M	Equivalent Resistor Value (recommended)	Brake Unit Part No. and Quantity		Brake Resistors Part No. and Quantity		Brake Torque 10%ED	Min. Equivalent Resistor Value for each AC Motor Drive
	hp	kW									
230V Series	0.5	0.4	ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF	0.216	200 W 250 Ω	BU-2-…	1	RF220T 250R	1	170	100 Ω
	1	0.75	ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF/2T	0.427	200 W 150 Ω	BU-2-…	1	RF220T 150R	1	140	80 Ω
	2	1.5	ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF	0.849	300 W 85 Ω	(*)		RF300DT 100R	1	102	40 Ω
			ADV50-1015-XXX-2T		300 W 85 Ω	BU-2-…	1	RF300DT 100R	1	102	80 Ω
	3	2.2	ADV50-2022-XBX-2M-F/2T	1.262	450 W 60 Ω	(*)		RF300DT 68R	1	102	40 Ω
	5	3.7	ADV50-3037-XBX-2T	2.080	650 W 40 Ω	(*)		RFPD750DT 45R	1	92	40 Ω
	7.5	5.5	ADV50-3055-XBX-2T	3.111	750 W 34 Ω	(*)		RFPD750DT 38R	1	73	34 Ω
	10	7.5	ADV50-3075-XBX-2T	4.148	1100 W 24 Ω	(*)		RFPD750DT 26R	1	78	24 Ω
460V Series	0.5	0.4	ADV50-1004-XXX-4F	0.216	300 W 400 Ω	BU-4-…	1	RF 300DT 400R	1	400	400 Ω
	1	0.75	ADV50-1007-XXX-4F	0.427	300 W 400 Ω	BU-4-…	1	RF 300DT 400R	1	200	200 Ω
	2	1.5	ADV50-1015-XXX-4F	0.849	400 W 300 Ω	BU-4-…	1	RF300DT 200R	1	200	160 Ω
	3	2.2	ADV50-2022-XBX-4F	1.262	600 W 200 Ω	(*)		RF300DT 150R	1	185	140 Ω
	5	3.7	ADV50-2037-XBX-4F	2.080	750 W 140 Ω	(*)		RFPD750DT 100R	1	165	96 Ω
	7.5	5.5	ADV50-3055-XBX-4F	3.111	1100 W 96 Ω	(*)		RFPD750DT 100R	1	111	96 Ω
	10	7.5	ADV50-3075-XBX-4F	4.148	1500 W 69 Ω	(*)		RFPD750DT 80R	1	102	69 Ω
	15	11	ADV50-3110-XBX-4F	6.186	2.000 W 53 Ω	(*)		RFPD1100DT 55R	1	80	53 Ω

(*) : Internal Braking Unit

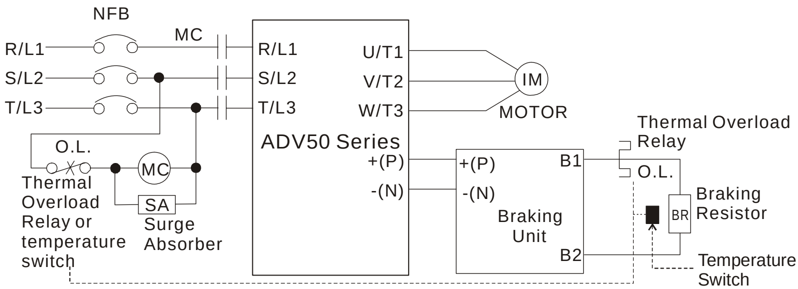
NOTE

1. Please select the brake unit and/or brake resistor according to the table. Please use the braking unit according to the Equivalent Resistor Value.
2. If damage to the drive or other equipment is due to the fact that the brake resistors and the braking modules in use are not provided by Gefran, the warranty will be void.
3. Take into consideration the safety of the environment when installing the brake resistors.
4. If the minimum resistance value is to be utilized, consult local dealers for the calculation of the power in Watt.
5. Please select thermal relay trip contact to prevent resistor over load. Use the contact to switch power off to the AC motor drive!
6. When using more than 2 brake units, equivalent resistor value of parallel brake unit can't be less than the value in the column "Minimum Equivalent Resistor Value for Each AC Drive" (the right-most column in the table).
7. Please read the wiring information in the user manual of the brake unit thoroughly prior to installation and operation.
8. Definition for Braking Usage ED%

   Explanation: The definition of the barking usage ED(%) is for assurance of enough time for the braking unit and braking resistor to dissipate away heat generated by braking. When the braking resistor heats up, the resistance would increase with temperature, and braking torque would decrease accordingly. Suggest cycle time is one minute

9. For safety reasons, install a thermal overload relay between braking unit and braking resistor. Together with the magnetic contactor (MC) in the mains supply circuit to the drive it offers protection in case of any malfunctioning. The purpose of installing the thermal overload relay is to protect the braking resistor against damage due to frequent braking or in case the braking unit is continuously on due to unusual high input voltage. Under these circumstances the thermal overload relay switches off the power to the drive. Never let the thermal overload relay switch off only the braking resistor as this will cause serious damage to the AC Motor Drive.



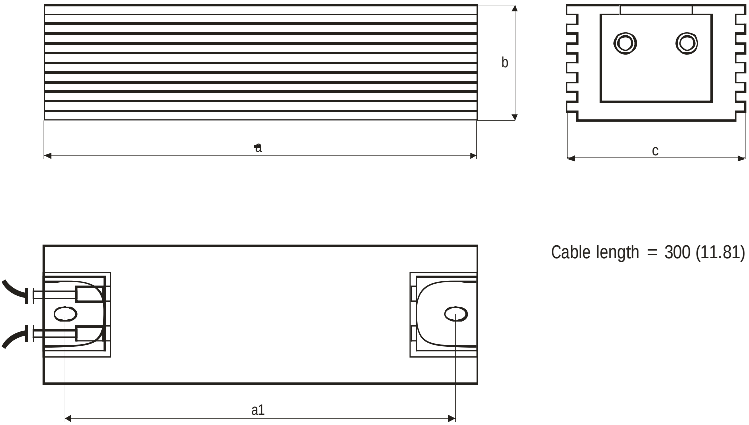
Note1: When using the AC drive with DC reactor, please refer to wiring diagram in the AC drive user manual for the wiring of terminal +(P) of Braking unit.

Note2: **Do NOT** wire terminal -(N) to the neutral point of power system.

B.1.1 Dimensions and Weights for Brake Resistors

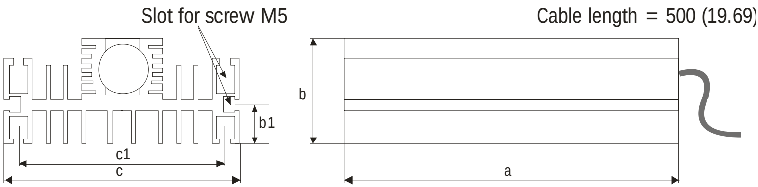
Dimensions are in millimeter (inches)

Order P/N: RF 220 T 150R (S8T0CQ), RF 220 T 250R (S8T0CP)



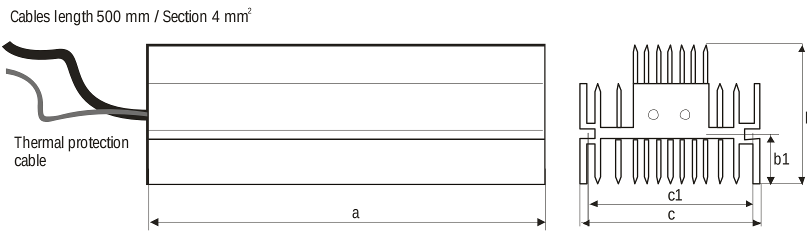
Model no. (code)	a	b	c	a1	Max. Weight (g)
RF 220 T 150R (S8T0CQ)	300 (11.81)	27 (1.06)	36 (1.42)	290 (11.42)	500
RF 220 T 250R (S8T0CP)					

RF 300 DT …R



Model no.	(cod.)	a	b	c	b1	c1	Max. weight (g)
RF 300 DT 68R	(S8T0CS)	260 (10.2)	47 (1.85)	106 (4.17)	17.5 (0.69)	93.5 (3.68)	1400
RF 300 DT 100R	(S8T0CB)						
RF 300 DT 150R	(S8T0CT)						
RF 300 DT 200R	(S8T1DB)						
RF 300 DT 400R	(S8T0CR)						

RFP…DT …R



Modello n.	(cod.)	a	b	c	b1	c1	Max. weight (g)
RFPD750DT 26R	(S8T0CZ)	200 (7.9)	70 (2.8)	106 (4.17)	17.5 (0.69)	93.5 (3.68)	1700
RFPD750DT 38R	(S8T0CU)						
RFPD750DT 45R	(S8T0CV)						
RFPD750DT 80R	(S8T0CD)						
RFPD750DT 100R	(S8SY4)						
RFPD1100DT 55R	(S8T1DA)	320 (12.6)	70 (2.8)	106 (4.17)	17.5 (0.69)	93.5 (3.68)	2.7 (5.95)

B.2 Non-fuse Circuit Breaker Chart

Per UL 508C, paragraph 45.8.4, part a:

1. For 1-phase drives, the current rating of the breaker shall be 4 times maximum input current rating.
2. For 3-phase drives, the current rating of the breaker shall be 4 times maximum output current rating.

(Refer to Appendix A for rated input/output current)

1-phase		3-phase	
Model	**Recommended non-fuse breaker (A)**	**Model**	**Recommended non-fuse breaker (A)**
ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF	15	ADV50-1004-XXX-4F	5
ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF	20	ADV50-1007-XXX-2T	10
ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF	30	ADV50-1007-XXX-4F	5
ADV50-2022-XBX-2MF	50	ADV50-1015-XXX-2T	20
		ADV50-1015-XXX-4F	10
		ADV50-2022-XBX-2T	30
		ADV50-2022-XBX-4F	15
		ADV50-2037-XBX-2T	40
		ADV50-2037-XBX-4F	20
		ADV50-3055-XBX-2T	50
		ADV50-3055-XBX-4F	30
		ADV50-3075-XBX-2T	60
		ADV50-3075-XBX-4F	40
		ADV50-3110-XBX-4F	50

B.3 Fuse Specification Chart

Smaller fuses than those shown in the table are permitted.

Model	I (A) Input	I (A) Output	Line Fuse		
			Europe	America (UL)	
			gR I (A)	I (A)	Bussmann P/N
ADV50-1007-XXX-2T	5.1	4.2	8	10	JJN-10
ADV50-1004-XXX-2MF	6.5	2.5	10	15	JJN-15
ADV50-1015-XXX-2T ADV50-1007-XXX-2MF	9 9.7	7.5 4.2	16	20	JJN-20
ADV50-2022-XBX-2T ADV50-2015-XBX-2MF	15 15.7	11 7.5	25	30	JJN-30
ADV50-2037-XBX-2T	20.6	17	32	40	JJN-40
ADV50-2022-XBX-2MF ADV50-3055-XBX-2T	24 26	11 25	40	50	JJN-50
ADV50-3075-XBX-2T	34	33	50	60	JJN-60
ADV50-1004-XXX-4F ADV50-1007-XXX-4F	1.9 3.2	1.5 2.5	6	5	JJS-6
ADV50-1015-XXX-4F	4.3	4.2	8	10	JJS-10
ADV50-2022-XBX-4F	7.1	5.5	12	15	JJS-15
ADV50-2037-XBX-4F	11.2	8.2	20	20	JJS-20
ADV50-3055-XBX-4F	14	13	25	30	JJS-30
ADV50-3075-XBX-4F	19	18	32	40	JJS-40
ADV50-3110-XBX-4F	26	24	40	50	JJS-50

B.4 AC Reactor

B.4.1 AC Input Reactor Recommended Value

230V, 50/60Hz, 1-Phase

kW	HP	Fundamental Amps	Max. continuous Amps	Inductance (mH)
				3~5% impedance
0.2	1/4	4	6	6.5
0.4	1/2	5	7.5	3
0.75	1	8	12	1.5
1.5	2	12	18	1.25
2.2	3	18	27	0.8

460V, 50/60Hz, 3-Phase

kW	HP	Fundamental Amps	Max. continuous Amps	Inductance (mH)	
				3% impedance	**5% impedance**
0.4	1/2	2	3	20	32
0.75	1	4	6	9	12
1.5	2	4	6	6.5	9
2.2	3	8	12	5	7.5
3.7	5	8	12	3	5
5.5	7.5	12	18	2.5	4.2
7.5	10	18	27	1.5	2.5
11	15	25	37.5	1.2	2
15	20	35	52.5	0.8	1.2

B.4.2 AC Output Reactor Recommended Value

230V, 50/60Hz, 3-Phase

kW	HP	Fundamental Amps	Max. continuous Amps	Inductance (mH)	
				3% impedance	**5% impedance**
0.2	1/4	4	4	9	12
0.4	1/2	6	6	6.5	9
0.75	1	8	12	3	5
1.5	2	8	12	1.5	3
2.2	3	12	18	1.25	2.5

kW	HP	Fundamental Amps	Max. continuous Amps	Inductance (mH)	
				3% impedance	**5% impedance**
3.7	5	18	27	0.8	1.5
5.5	7.5	25	37.5	0.5	1.2
7.5	10	35	52.5	0.4	0.8

460V, 50/60Hz, 3-Phase

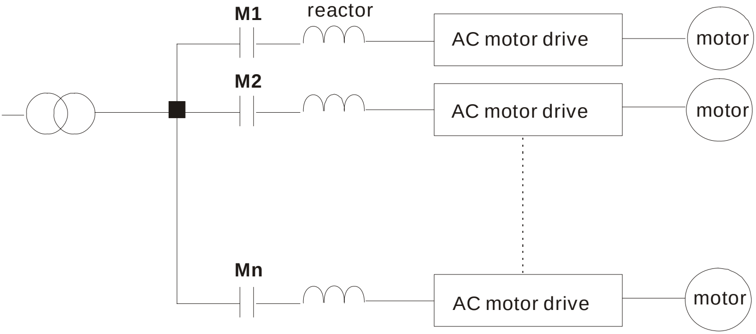
kW	HP	Fundamental Amps	Max. continuous Amps	Inductance (mH)	
				3% impedance	**5% impedance**
0.4	1/2	2	3	20	32
0.75	1	4	6	9	12
1.5	2	4	6	6.5	9
2.2	3	8	12	5	7.5
3.7	5	12	18	2.5	4.2
5.5	7.5	18	27	1.5	2.5
7.5	10	18	27	1.5	2.5
11	15	25	37.5	1.2	2

B.4.3 Applications

Connected in input circuit

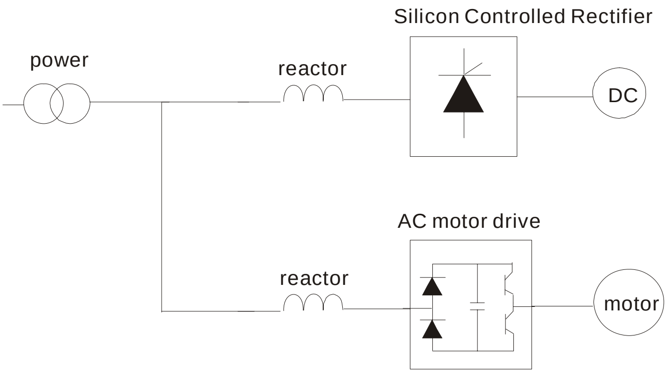
Application 1	Question
When more than one AC motor drive is connected to the same mains power, and one of them is ON during operation.	When applying power to one of the AC motor drive, the charge current of the capacitors may cause voltage dip. The AC motor drive may be damaged when over current occurs during operation.

Correct wiring



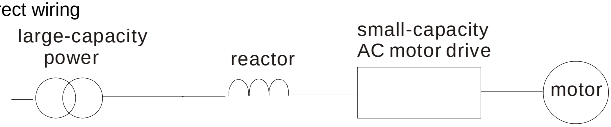
Application 2	Question
Silicon rectifier and AC motor drive are connected to the same power.	Switching spikes will be generated when the silicon rectifier switches on/off. These spikes may damage the mains circuit.

Correct wiring



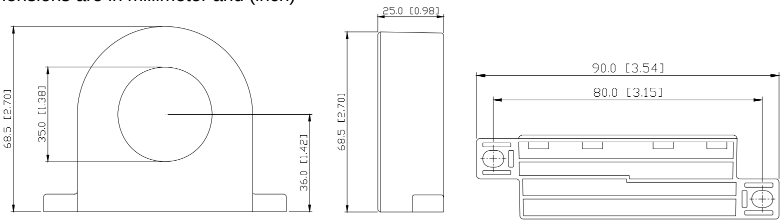
Application 3	Question
Used to improve the input power factor, to reduce harmonics and provide protection from AC line disturbances. (surges, switching spikes, short interruptions, etc.). The AC line reactor should be installed when the power supply capacity is 500kVA or more and exceeds 6 times the inverter capacity, or the mains wiring distance ≤10m.	When the mains power capacity is too large, line impedance will be small and the charge current will be too high. This may damage AC motor drive due to higher rectifier temperature.

Correct wiring



B.5 Zero Phase Reactor (RF-OUT-ADV20/50)

Dimensions are in millimeter and (inch)



Cable type (**Note**)	Recommended Wire Size			Qty.	Wiring Method
	AWG	mm^2	Nominal (mm^2)		
Single-core	≦10	≦5.3	≦5.5	1	Diagram A
	≦2	≦33.6	≦38	4	Diagram B
Three-core	≦12	≦3.3	≦3.5	1	Diagram A
	≦1	≦42.4	≦50	4	Diagram B

Note: 600V Insulated unshielded Cable.

Diagram A
Please wind each wire 4 times around the core. The reactor must be put at inverter output as close as possible.

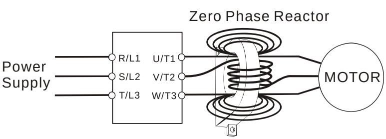
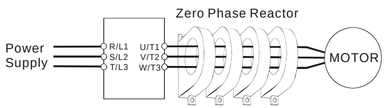


Diagram B
Please put all wires through 4 cores in series without winding.



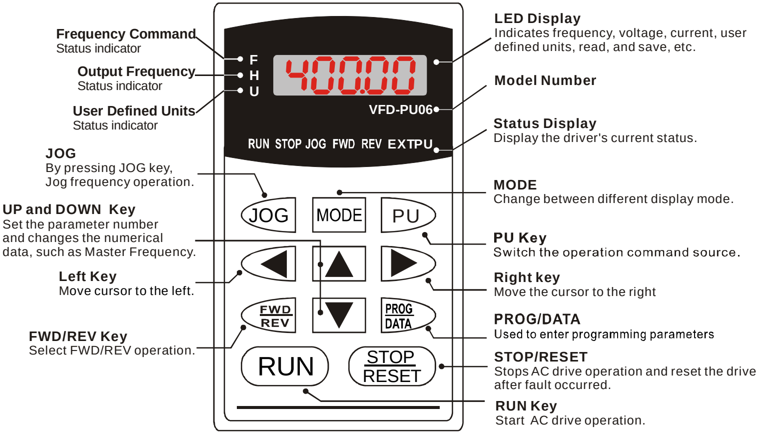
Note 1: The table above gives approximate wire size for the zero phase reactors but the selection is ultimately governed by the type and diameter of cable fitted i.e. the cable must fit through the center hole of zero phase reactors.

Note 2: Only the phase conductors should pass through, not the earth core or screen.

Note 3: When long motor output cables are used an output zero phase reactor may be required to reduce radiated emissions from the cable.

B.6 MEMORY KB-ADV20/50

B.6.1 Description of the Digital Keypad KB-ADV20/50



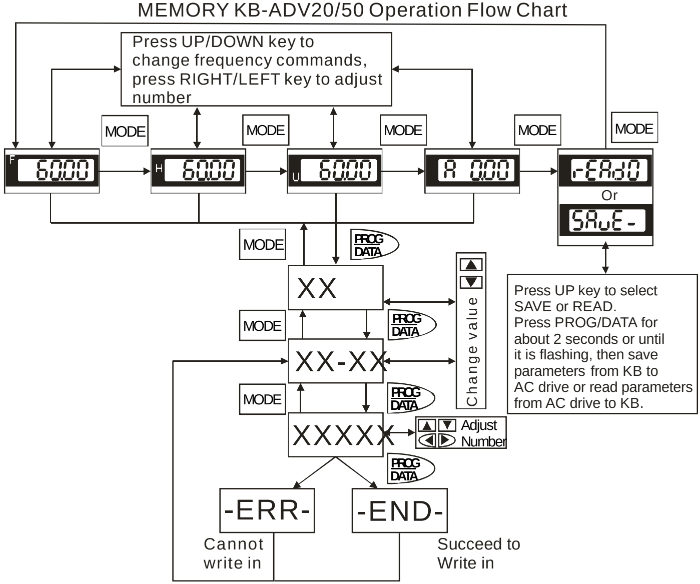
B.6.2 Explanation of Display Message

Display Message	Descriptions
F 60.00	The AC motor drive Master Frequency Command.
H 50.00	The Actual Operation Frequency present at terminals U, V, and W.
U 180.00	The custom unit (u)
A 5.0	The output current present at terminals U, V, and W.
rEAd0	Press ▲ to change the mode to READ. Press PROG/DATA for about 2 sec or until it's flashing, read the parameters of AC drive to the digital keypad KB-ADV20/50. It can read 4 groups of parameters to KB-ADV20/50. (read 0 – read 3)
SAvE-	Press ▲ to change the mode to SAVE. Press PROG/DATA for about 2 sec or until it's flashing, then write the parameters from the digital keypad KB-ADV20/50 to AC drive. If it has saved, it will show the type of AC motor drive.

Display Message	Descriptions
06-00	The specified parameter setting.
10	The actual value stored in the specified parameter.
E.F.	External Fault
-End-	"End" displays for approximately 1 second if the entered input data have been accepted. After a parameter value has been set, the new value is automatically stored in memory. To modify an entry, use the ▲ or ▼ keys.
-Err-	"Err" displays if the input is invalid.
CE-10	Communication Error. Please check the AC motor drive user manual (Chapter 5, Group 9 Communication Parameter) for more details.

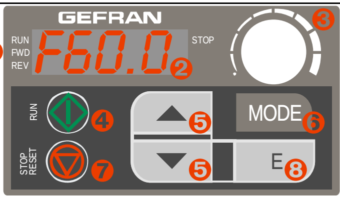
B.6.3 Operation Flow Chart

MEMORY KB-ADV20/50 Operation Flow Chart



B.7 KB-ADV50

B.7.1 Description of the Digital Keypad KB-ADV50

		❹	**RUN Key** Start AC drive operation.
		❺	**UP and DOWN Key** Set the parameter number and changes the numerical data, such as Master Frequency.
		❻	**MODE** Change between different display mode.
❶	**Status Display** Display the driver's current status	❼	**STOP/RESET** Stops AC drive operation and reset the drive after fault occurred.
❷	**LED Display** Indicates frequency, voltage, current, user defined units and etc.	❽	**ENTER** Used to enter/modify programming parameters
❸	**Potentiometer** For master Frequency setting.		

Display Message	Descriptions
	Displays the AC drive Master Frequency.
	Displays the actual output frequency at terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3.
	User defined unit (where U = F x Pr.00.05)
	Displays the output current at terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3.
	Displays the AC motor drive forward run status.
	Displays the AC motor drive reverse run status.
	The counter value (C).
	Displays the selected parameter.

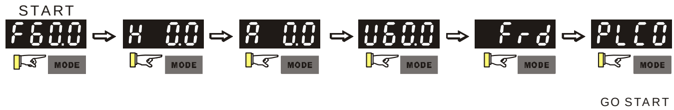
Display Message	Descriptions
	Displays the actual stored value of the selected parameter.
	External Fault.
	Display “End” for approximately 1 second if input has been accepted by pressing E (Enter) key. After a parameter value has been set, the new value is automatically stored in memory. To modify an entry, use the ▲ and ▼ keys.
	Display “Err”, if the input is invalid.

NOTE

When the setting exceeds 99.99 for those numbers with 2 decimals (i.e. unit is 0.01), it will only display 1 decimal due to 4-digital display.

B.7.2 How to Operate the Digital Keypad

Setting Mode

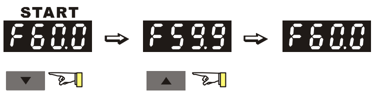


NOTE: In the selected mode, press ENTER to set the parameters.

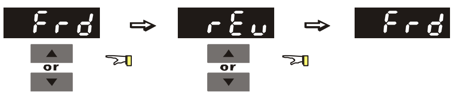
Setting parameters

NOTE¡ In the parameter setting mode, you can press ENTER to the selected mode.

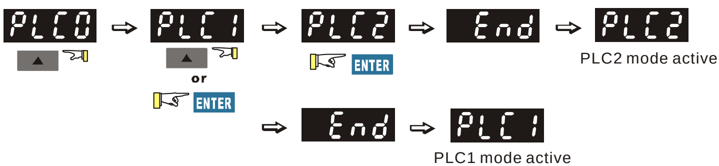
To change data



Setting direction (When operation source is digital keypad)



Setting PLC Mode



B.7.3 Reference Table for the 7-segment LED Display of the Digital Keypad

Digit	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
LED Display										

English alphabet	A	b	Cc	d	E	F	G	Hh	Ii	Jj
LED Display										

English alphabet	K	L	n	Oo	P	q	r	S	Tt	U
LED Display										

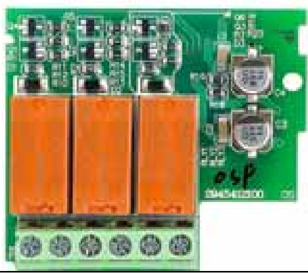
English alphabet	v	Y	Z							
LED Display										

B.8 Extension Card

For details, please refer to the separate instruction shipped with these optional cards or download from our website http://www.gefran.com

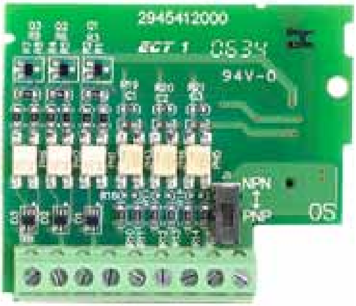
Installation method

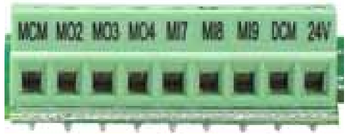
B.8.1 Relay Card

EXP-R2-ADV50	Relay Output
	
EXP-R3-ADV50	Relay Output
	

B.8.2 Digital I/O Card

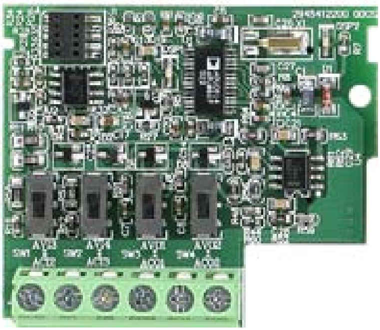
EXP-D6-ADV50





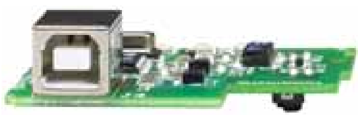
B.8.3 Analog I/O Card

EXP-A4-ADV50



B.8.4 Communication Card

EXP-USB-ADV50



connect to extension card connect to PC

B.8.5 Speed Feedback Card

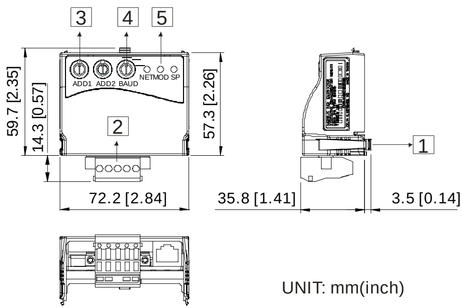
EXP-ENC-ADV50

B.9 Fieldbus Modules

B.9.1 DeviceNet Communication Module (EXP-DN-ADV20/50)

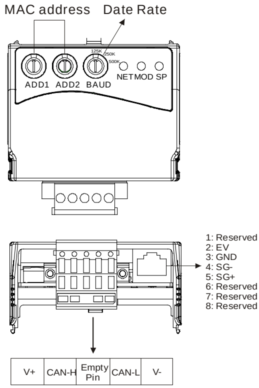
B.9.1.1 Panel Appearance and Dimensions

1. For RS-485 connection to ADV50 2. Communication port for connecting DeviceNet network 3. Address selector 4. Baud rate selector 5. Three LED status indicators for monitor. (Refer to the figure below)

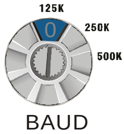


B.9.1.2 Wiring and Settings

Refer to following diagram for details.

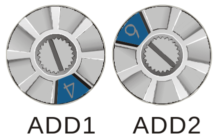


Setting baud rate



Switch Value	Baud Rate
0	125K
1	250K
2	500K
Other	AUTO

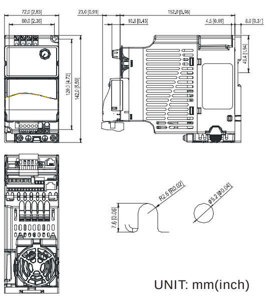
Setting MAC addresses: use decimal system.



B.9.1.3 Mounting Method

Step1 and step2 show how to mount this communication module onto ADV50. The dimension on the left hand side is for your reference.

Dimensions



STEP 1

STEP 2

B.9.1.4 Power Supply

No external power is needed. Power is supplied via RS-485 port that is connected to ADV50. An 8 pins RJ-45 cable, which is packed together with this communication module, is used to connect the RS-485 port between ADV50 and this communication module for power. This communication module will perform the function once it is connected. Refer to the following paragraph for LED indications.

B.9.1.5 LEDs Display

1. **SP:** Green LED means in normal condition, Red LED means abnormal condition.
2. **Module:** Green blinking LED means no I/O data transmission, Green steady LED means I/O data transmission OK.

   Red LED blinking or steady LED means module communication is abnormal.
3. **Network:** Green LED means DeviceNet communication is normal, Red LED means abnormal

NOTE

Refer to user manual for detail information-- *Chapter 5 Troubleshooting*.

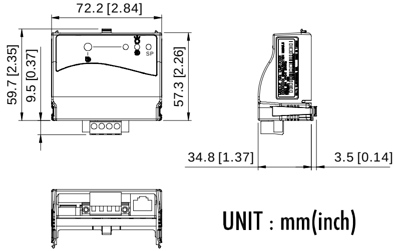
B.9.2 LonWorks Communication Module (EXP-LWK-ADV20/50)

B.9.2.1 Introduction

Device EXP-LWK-ADV20/50 is used for communication interface between Modbus and LonTalk. EXP-LWK-ADV20/50 needs be configured via LonWorks network tool first, so that it can perform the function on LonWorks network. No need to set EXP-LWK-ADV20/50 address.

This manual provides instructions for the installation and setup for EXP-LWK-ADV20/50 that is used to communicate with Gefran ADV50 (firmware version of ADV50 should conform with EXP-LWK-ADV20/50 according to the table below) via LonWorks Network.

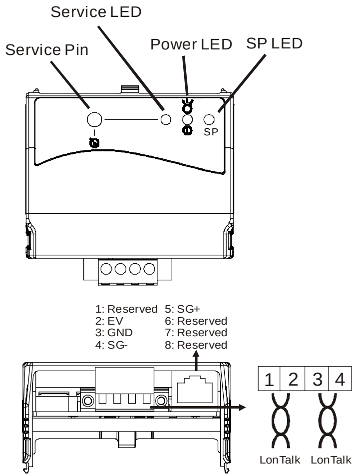
B.9.2.2 Dimensions



B.9.2.3 Specifications

Power supply:	16-30VDC, 750mW
Communication:	Modbus in ASCII format, protocol: 9600, 7, N, 2
LonTalk:	free topology with FTT-10A 78 Kbps.
LonTalk terminal:	4-pin terminals, wire gauge: 28-12 AWG, wire strip length: 7-8mm
RS-485 port:	8 pins with RJ-45

B.9.2.4 Wiring



- *Terminal definition for LonTalk system*

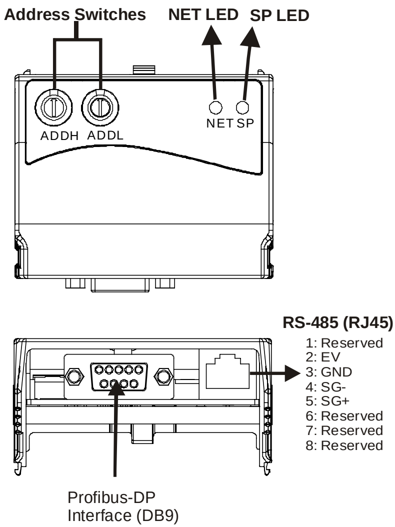
Terminal	Symbol	Function
1		These are twisted pair cables to connect to LonTalk system. Terminals 1 and 2 should be used as one group, and the same for terminals 3 and 4.
2		
3		
4		

B.9.2.5 LED Indications

There are three LEDs in front panel of EXP-LWK-ADV20/50. If the communication is normal, power LED, SP LED should be green (red LED means abnormal communication) and service LED should be OFF. If LEDs display do not match, refer to user manual for details.

B.9.3 Profibus Communication Module (EXP-PDP-ADV20/50)

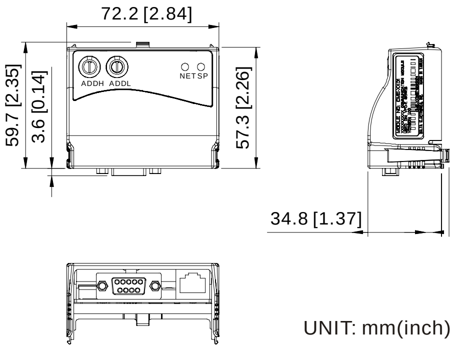
B.9.3.1 Panel Appearance



1. SP LED: Indicating the connection status between ADV50 and EXP-PDP-ADV20/50.
2. NET LED: Indicating the connection status between EXP-PDP-ADV20/50 and PROFIBUS-DP.
3. Address Switches: Setting the address of EXP-PDP-ADV20/50 on PROFIBUS- DP network.
4. RS-485 Interface (RJ45): Connecting to ADV50, and supply power to EXP-PDP-ADV20/50.
5. PROFIBUS-DP Interface (DB9): 9-PIN connector that connects to PROFIBUS-DP network.

6. Extended Socket: 4-PIN socket that connects to PROFIBUS-DP network.

B.9.3.2 Dimensions



UNIT: mm(inch)

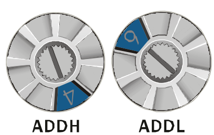
B.9.3.3 Parameters Settings in ADV50

	ADV50
Baud Rate 9600	Pr.09.01=1
RTU 8, N, 2	Pr.09.04=3
Freq. Source	Pr.02.00=4
Command Source	Pr.02.01=3

B.9.3.4 Power Supply

The power of EXP-PDP-ADV20/50 is supplied from ADV50. Please connect ADV50 to CME-PD01 by using 8 pins RJ-45 cable, which is packed together with EXP-PDP-ADV20/50. After connection is completed, EXP-PDP-ADV20/50 is powered whenever power is applied to ADV50.

B.9.3.5 PROFIBUS Address



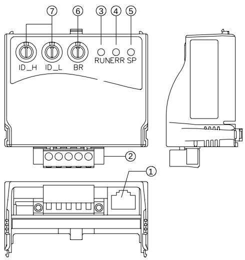
EXP-PDP-ADV20/50 has two rotary switches for the user to select the PROFIBUS address. The set value via 2 address switches, ADDH and ADDL, is in HEX format. ADDH sets the upper 4 bits, and ADDL sets the lower 4 bits of the PROFIBUS address.

Address	Meaning
1..0x7D	Valid PROFIBUS address
0 or 0x7E..0xFE	Invalid PROFIBUS address

B.9.4 EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 (CANopen)

EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 CANopen communication module is specifically for connecting to CANopen communication module of Gefran ADV50 AC motor drive.

B.9.4.1 Product Profile



Unit: mm

①	COM port
②	CANopen connection port
③	RUN indicator
④	ERROR indicator
⑤	SP (Scan Port) indicator
⑥	Baud rate switch
⑦	Address switch

B.9.4.2 Specifications

CANopen Connection

Interface	Pluggable connector (5.08mm)
Transmission method	CAN
Transmission cable	2-wire twisted shielded cable
Electrical isolation	500V DC

Communication

Message type	Process Data Objects (PDO)	Baud rate	10 Kbps
	Service Data Object (SDO)		20 Kbps
	Synchronization (SYNC)		50 Kbps
	Emergency (EMCY)		125 Kbps
	Network Management (NMT)		250 Kbps
			500 Kbps
			800 Kbps
			1 Mbps
Product code	Gefran ADV50 AC motor drive 22		
Device type	402		
Vendor ID	477		

Environmental Specifications

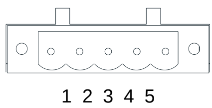
Noise Immunity	ESD(IEC 61131-2, IEC 61000-4-2): 8KV Air Discharge EFT(IEC 61131-2, IEC 61000-4-4): Power Line: 2KV, Digital I/O: 1KV, Analog & Communication I/O: 1KV Damped-Oscillatory Wave: Power Line: 1KV, Digital I/O: 1KV RS(IEC 61131-2, IEC 61000-4-3): 26MHz ~ 1GHz, 10V/m
Environment	Operation: 0°C ~ 55°C (Temperature), 50 ~ 95% (Humidity), Pollution degree 2; Storage: -40°C ~ 70°C (Temperature), 5 ~ 95% (Humidity)
Vibration / Shock Resistance	Standard: IEC1131-2, IEC 68-2-6 (TEST Fc/IEC1131-2 & IEC 68-2-27 (TEST Ea)
Certifications	Standard: IEC 61131-2,UL508

B.9.4.3 Components

Pin Definition on CANopen Connection Port

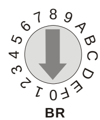
To connect with CANopen, use the connector enclosed with EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 or any connectors you can buy in the store for wiring.

Pin	Signal	Content
1	CAN_GND	Ground / 0 V / V-
2	CAN_L	Signal-
3	SHIELD	Shield
4	CAN_H	Signal+
5	-	Reserved



Baud Rate Setting

Rotary switch (BR) sets up the communication speed on CANopen network in hex. Setup range: 0 ~ 7 (8 ~F are forbidden)

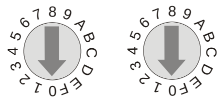


Example: If you need to set up the communication speed of EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 as 500K, simply switch BR to “5”.

BR Value	Baud rate	BR Value	Baud rate
0	10K	4	250K
1	20K	5	500K
2	50K	6	800K
3	125K	7	1M

MAC ID Setting

Rotary switches (ID_L and ID_H) set up the Node-ID on CANopen network in hex. Setup range: 00 ~ 7F (80 ~FF are forbidden)



Example: If you need to set up the communication address of EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 as 26(1AH), simply switch ID_H to “1” and ID_L to “A”.

Switch Setting	Content
0 … 7F	Valid CANopen MAC ID setting
Other	Invalid CANopen MAC ID setting

B.9.4.4 LED Indicator Explanation & Troubleshooting

There are 3 LED indicators, RUN, ERROR and SP, on EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 to indicate the communication status of EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 .

RUN LED

LED Status	State	Indication
OFF	No power	No power on EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 card
Single Flash (Green)	STOPPED	EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 is in STOPPED state
Blinking (Green)	PRE-OPERATIONAL	EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 is in the PRE-OPERATIONAL state
Green ON	OPERATIONAL	EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 is in the OPERATIONAL state
Red ON	Configuration error	Node-ID or Baud rate setting error

ERROR LED

LED Status	State	Indication
OFF	No error	EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 is working condition

LED Status	State	Indication
Single Flash (Red)	Warning limit reached	At least one of error counter of the CANopen controller has reached or exceeded the warning level (too many error frames)
Double Flash (Red)	Error control event	A guard event or heartbeat event has occurred
Red ON	Bus-off	The CANopen controller is bus-off

SP LED

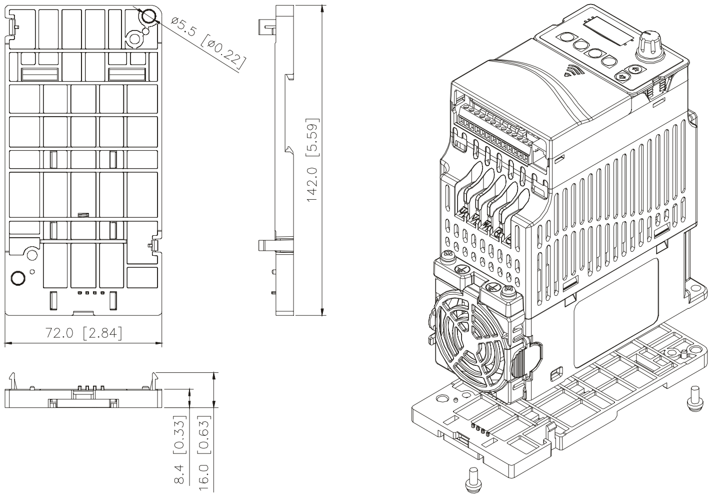
LED Status	State	Indication
OFF	No Power	No power on EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 card
LED Blinking (Red)	CRC check error	Check your communication setting in ADV50 drives (19200,<8,N,2>,RTU)
Red ON	Connection failure/No connection	1. Check the connection between ADV50 drive and EXP-CAN-ADV20/50 card is correct 2. Re-wire the ADV50 connection and ensure that the wire specification is correct
LED Blinking (Green)	CME-COP01 returns error code	Check the PLC program, ensure the index and sub-index is correct
Green ON	Normal	Communication is normal

LED Descriptions

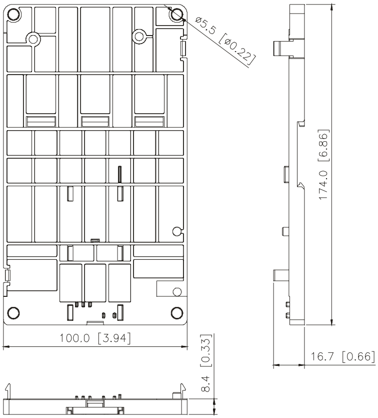
State	Description
LED ON	Constantly on
LED OFF	Constantly off
LED blinking	Flash, on for 0.2s and off for 0.2s
LED single flash	On for 0.2s and off for 1s
LED double flash	On for 0.2s off for 0.2s, on for 0.2s and off for 1s

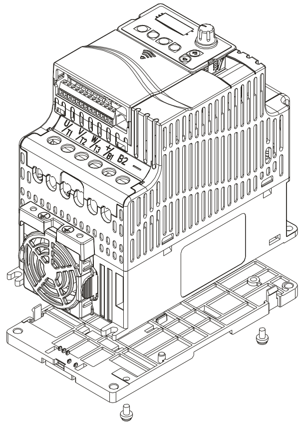
B.10 DIN Rail

B.10.1 KIT DIN 50-SA



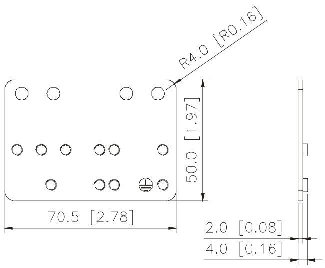
B.10.2 KIT DIN 50-SB



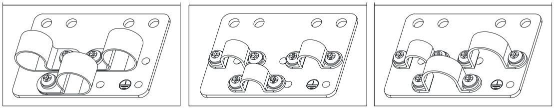


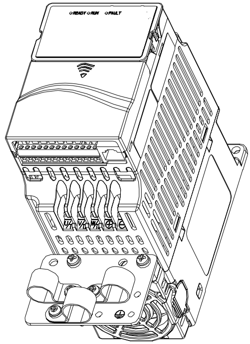
B.10.3 KIT GROUND

EMC earthing plate for Shielding Cable



C CLAMP	TWO HOLE STRAP 1	TWO HOLE STRAP 2




READY RUN FAULT

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix C How to Use PLC Function

C.1 PLC Overview

C.1.1 Introduction

The PLC function built in the ADV50 provides following commands: Soft PLC-ADV50, basic commands and application commands.

C.1.2 Ladder Diagram Editor – Soft PLC-ADV50

Soft PLC-ADV50 is a program editor of Gefran ADV50 series for WINDOWS. Besides general PLC program planning and general WINDOWS editing functions, such as cut, paste, copy, multi-windows, Soft PLC-ADV50 also provides various Chinese/English comment editing and other special functions (e.g. register editing, settings, the data readout, the file saving, and contacts monitor and set, etc.).
Following is the system requirement for Soft PLC-ADV50:

Item	System Requirement
Operation System	Windows 95/98/2000/NT/ME/XP
CPU	Pentium 90 and above
Memory	16MB and above (32MB and above is recommended)
Hard Disk	Capacity: 50MB and above CD-ROM (for installing Soft PLC-ADV50)
Monitor	Resolution: 640×480, 16 colors and above, It is recommended to set display setting of Windows to 800×600.
Mouse	General mouse or the device compatible with Windows
Printer	Printer with Windows driver
RS-232 port	At least one of COM1 to COM8 can be connected to PLC
Applicable Models	Gefran ADV50 series

C.2 Start-up

C.2.1 The Steps for PLC Execution

Please operate PLC function by the following five steps.

1. Switch the mode to PLC2 for program download/upload:

   A. Go to “PLC0” page by pressing the MODE key

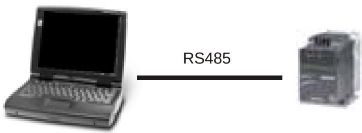
   B. Change to “PLC2” by pressing the “UP” key and then press the “ENTER” key after confirmation

   C. If succeeded, “END” is displayed and back to “PLC2” after one or two seconds.

NOTE

You don’t need to care about the PLC warning, such as PLod, PLSv and PldA, before downloading a program to ADV50.

2. Connection: Please connect RJ-45 of AC motor drive to computer via RS485-to-RS232 converter.



3. Run the program. The PLC status will always be PLC2, even if the AC motor drive is switched off.

   There are three ways to operate PLC:

   A. In “PLC1” page: execute PLC program.

   B. In “PLC2” page: execute/stop PLC program by using WPL software.

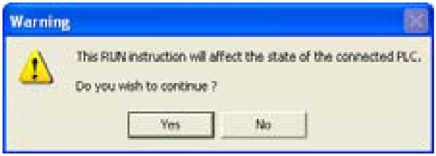
   C. After setting multi-function input terminals (MI3 to MI9) to 23 (RUN/STOP PLC), it will display “PLC1” for executing PLC when the terminal is ON. It will display “PLC0” to stop PLC program when terminals are OFF.

NOTE

When external terminals are set to 23 and the terminal is ON, it cannot use keypad to change PLC mode. Moreover, when it is PLC2, you cannot execute PLC program by external terminals.

NOTE

When power on after power off, the PLC status will be in “PLC1”.



4. When you are in “PLC2”, please remember to change to “PLC1” when finished to prevent anyone modifying PLC program.

NOTE

When output/input terminals (MI1~MI9, Relay1~Relay 4, MO1~MO4) are used in PLC program, they cannot be used in other places. For example, When Y0 in PLC program is activated, the corresponding output terminals Relay (RA/RB/RC) will be used. At this moment, parameter 03.00 setting will be invalid. Because the terminal has been used by PLC.

NOTE

The PLC corresponding input points for MI1 to MI6 are X0 to X5. When extension card are added, the extension input points will be numbered from X06 and output points will start from Y2 as shown in chapter C.2.2.

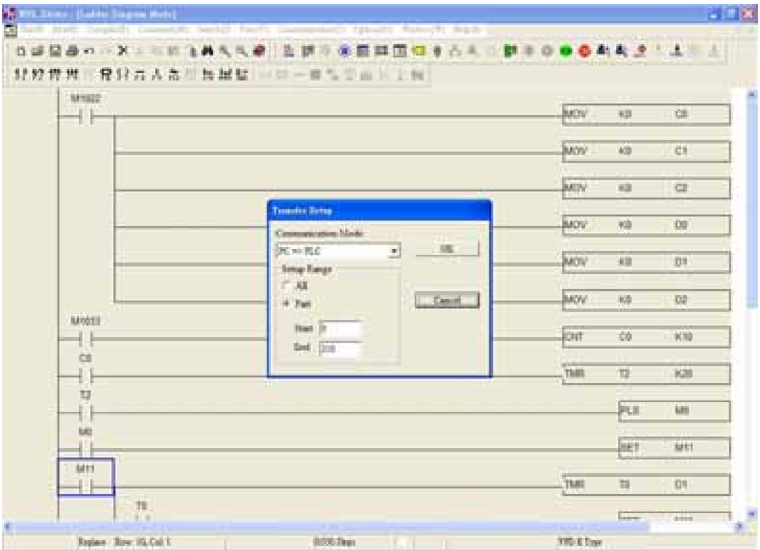
C.2.2 Device Reference Table

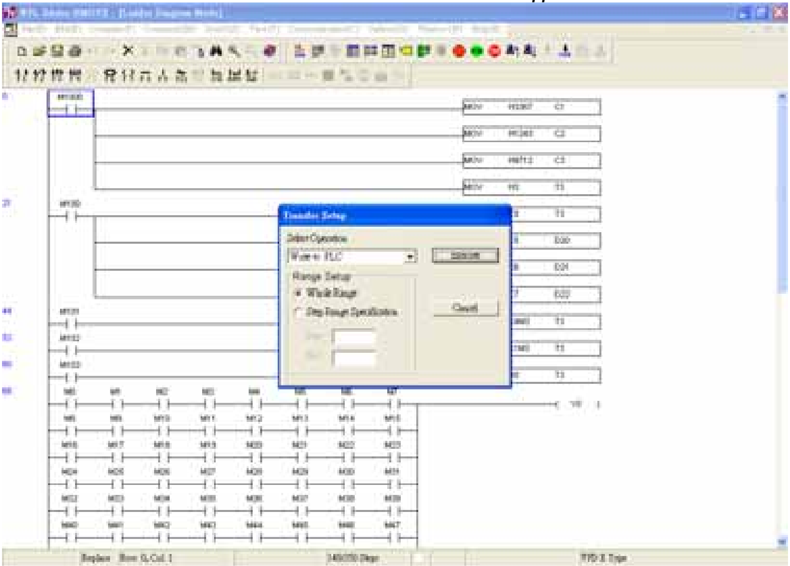
Device	X								
ID	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	10
Terminals of AC Drives	MI1	MI2	MI3	MI4	MI5	MI6	--	--	--
3IN/3OUT Card (EME-D33A)	--	--	--	--	--	--	MI7	MI8	MI9

Device	Y				
ID	0	1	2	3	4
Terminals of AC Drives	RY	MO1	--	--	--
Relay Card-2C (EME-DR2CA)	--	--	RY2	RY3	--
Relay Card-3A (EME-R3AA)	--	--	RY2	RY3	RY4
3IN/3OUT Card (EME-D33A)	--	--	MO2	MO3	MO4

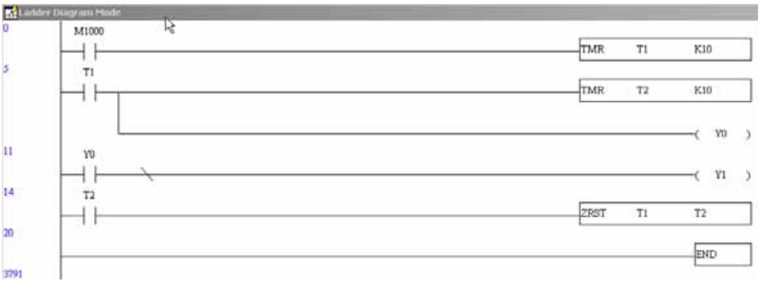
C.2.3 Soft PLC-ADV50 Installation

Download PLC program to AC drive: Refer to C.3 to C.7 for writing program and download the editor (Soft PLC-ADV50 V2.09) at GEFRAN website http://www.gefran.com





C.2.4 Program Input



C.2.5 Program Download

Please do following steps for program download.

Step 1. Press button  for compiler after inputting program in Soft PLC-ADV50.

Step 2. After finishing compiler, choose the item "Write to PLC" in the communication items.

After finishing Step 2, the program will be downloaded from Soft PLC-ADV50 to the AC motor drive by the communication format.

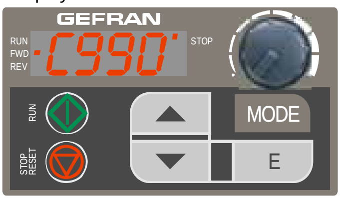
C.2.6 Program Monitor

If you execute “start monitor” in the communication item during executing PLC, the ladder diagram will be shown as follows.

C.2.7 The Limit of PLC

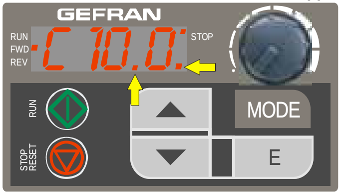
1. The protocol of PLC is 7,E,1
2. Make sure that the AC drive is stop and stop PLC before program upload/download.
3. The priority of commands WPR and FREQ is FREQ > WPR.
4. When setting P 00.04 to 2, the display will be the value in PLC register D1043.

    A. 0 ~ 999 display:



    B. 1000 ~ 9999 display: It will only display the first 3 digits. The LED at the bottom-right corner will light to indicate 10 times of the display value. For example, the actual value for the following figure is 100X10=1000.

    C. 10000~65535 display: It will only display the first 3 digits. The LED at the bottom-right corner and the single decimal point between the middle and the right-most numbers will light to indicate 100 times of the display value. For example, the actual value for the following figure is 100X100=10000.

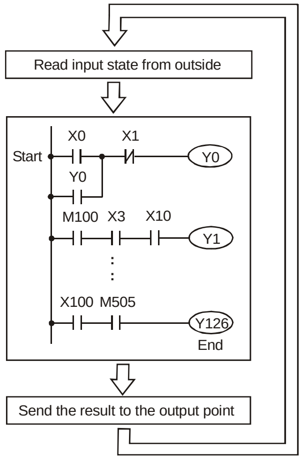


5. When it is changed to “PLC2”, RS-485 will be used by PLC.
6. When it is in PLC1 and PLC2 mode, the function to reset all parameters to factory setting is disabled (i.e. Pr.00.02 can’t be set to 9 or 10).

C.3 Ladder Diagram

C.3.1 Program Scan Chart of the PLC Ladder Diagram

Calculate the result by ladder diagram algorithm (it doesn't sent to the outer output point but the inner equipment will output immediately.)



Execute in cycles

C.3.2 Introduction

Ladder diagram is a diagram language that applied on the automatic control and it is also a diagram that made up of the symbols of electric control circuit. PLC procedures are finished after ladder diagram editor edits the ladder diagram. It is easy to understand the control flow that indicated with diagram and also accept by technical staff of electric control circuit. Many basic symbols and motions of ladder diagram are the same as mechanical and electrical equipments of traditional automatic power panel, such as button, switch, relay, timer, counter and etc.

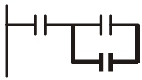
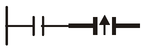
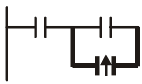
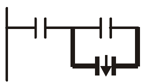
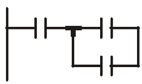
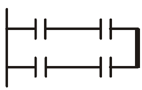
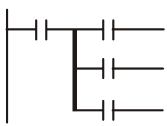
The kinds and amounts of PLC internal equipment will be different with brands. Although internal equipment has the name of traditional electric control circuit, such as relay, coil and contact. It doesn't have the real components in it. In PLC, it just has a basic unit of internal memory. If this bit is 1, it means the coil is ON and if this bit is 0, it means the coil is OFF. You should read the corresponding value of that bit when using contact (Normally Open, NO or contact a). Otherwise, you should read the opposite sate of corresponding value of that bit when using contact (Normally Closed, NC or contact b). Many relays will need many bits, such as 8-bits makes up a byte. 2 bytes can make up a word. 2 words makes up double word. When using many relays to do calculation, such as add/subtraction or shift, you could use byte, word or double word. Furthermore, the two equipments, timer and counter, in PLC not only have coil but also value of counting time and times.

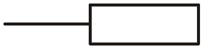
In conclusion, each internal storage unit occupies fixed storage unit. When using these equipments, the corresponding content will be read by bit, byte or word.

Basic introduction of the inner equipment of PLC:

Input relay	Input relay is the basic storage unit of internal memory that corresponds to external input point (it is the terminal that used to connect to external input switch and receive external input signal). Input signal from external will decide it to display 0 or 1. You couldn't change the state of input relay by program design or forced ON/OFF via Soft PLC-ADV50. The contacts (contact a, b) can be used unlimitedly. If there is no input signal, the corresponding input relay could be empty and can't be used with other functions. ☞ Equipment indication method: X0, X1,…X7, X10, X11,…. The symbol of equipment is X and the number uses octal.
Output relay	Output relay is the basic storage unit of internal memory that corresponds to external output point (it is used to connect to external load). It can be driven by input relay contact, the contact of other internal equipment and itself contact. It uses a normally open contact to connect to external load and other contacts can be used unlimitedly as input contacts. It doesn't have the corresponding output relay, if need, it can be used as internal relay. ☞ Equipment indication: Y0, Y1,…Y7, Y10, Y11,…. . The symbol of equipment is Y and the number uses octal.
Internal relay	The internal relay doesn't connect directly to outside. It is an auxiliary relay in PLC. Its function is the same as the auxiliary relay in electric control circuit. Each auxiliary relay has the corresponding basic unit. It can be driven by the contact of input relay, output relay or other internal equipment. Its contacts can be used unlimitedly. Internal auxiliary relay can't output directly, it should output with output point. ☞ Equipment indication: M0, M1,…, M4, M159. The symbol of equipment is M and the number uses decimal number system.
Timer	Timer is used to control time. There are coil, contact and timer storage. When coil is ON, its contact will act (contact a is close, contact b is open) when attaining desired time. The time value of timer is set by settings and each timer has its regular period. User sets the timer value and each timer has its timing period. Once the coil is OFF, the contact won't act (contact a is open and contact b is close) and the timer will be set to zero. ☞ Equipment indication: T0, T1,…,T15. The symbol of equipment is T and the number uses decimal system. The different number range corresponds with the different timing period.
Counter	Counter is used to count. It needs to set counter before using counter (i.e. the pulse of counter). There are coil, contacts and storage unit of counter in counter. When coil is from OFF to ON, that means input a pulse in counter and the counter should add 1. There are 16-bit, 32-bit and high-speed counter for user to use. ☞ Equipment indication: C0, C1,…,C7. The symbol of equipment is C and the number uses decimal.
Data register	PLC needs to handle data and operation when controlling each order, timer value and counter value. The data register is used to store data or parameters. It stores 16-bit binary number, i.e. a word, in each register. It uses two continuous number of data register to store double words. ☞ Equipment indication: D0, D1,…,D29. The symbol of equipment is D and the number uses decimal.

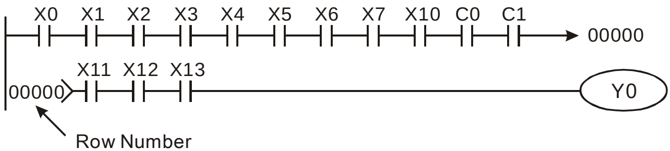
The structure and explanation of ladder diagram:

Ladder Diagram Structure	Explanation	Command	Equipment
	Normally open, contact a	LD	X, Y, M, T, C
	Normally closed, contact b	LDI	X, Y, M, T, C
	Serial normally open	AND	X, Y, M, T, C
	Parallel normally open	OR	X, Y, M, T, C
	Parallel normally closed	ORI	X, Y, M, T, C
	Rising-edge trigger switch	LDP	X, Y, M, T, C
	Falling-edge trigger switch	LDF	X, Y, M, T, C
	Rising-edge trigger in serial	ANDP	X, Y, M, T, C
	Falling-edge trigger in serial	ANDF	X, Y, M, T, C
	Rising-edge trigger in parallel	ORP	X, Y, M, T, C
	Falling-edge trigger in parallel	ORF	X, Y, M, T, C
	Block in serial	ANB	none
	Block in parallel	ORB	none
	Multiple output	MPS MRD MPP	none

Ladder Diagram Structure	Explanation	Command	Equipment
	Output command of coil drive	OUT	Y, M, S
	Basic command, Application command	Application command	Please refer to basic command and application command
	Inverse logic	INV	none

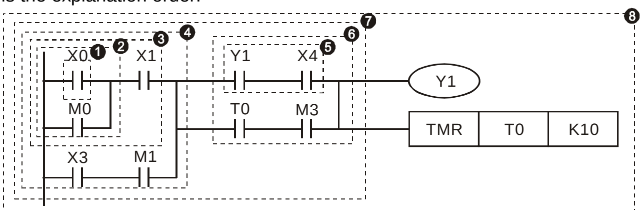
C.3.3 The Edition of PLC Ladder Diagram

The program edited method is from left power line to right power line. (the right power line will be omitted during the edited of Soft PLC-ADV50.) After editing a row, go to editing the next row. The maximum contacts in a row are 11 contacts. If you need more than 11 contacts, you could have the new row and start with continuous line to continue more input devices. The continuous number will be produced automatically and the same input point can be used repeatedly. The drawing is shown as follows.



The operation of ladder diagram is to scan from left upper corner to right lower corner. The output handling, including the operation frame of coil and application command, at the most right side in ladder diagram.

Take the following diagram for example; we analyze the process step by step. The number at the right corner is the explanation order.



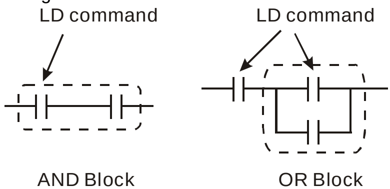
The explanation of command order:

1	LD	X0
2	OR	M0
3	AND	X1
4	LD	X3
	AND	M1

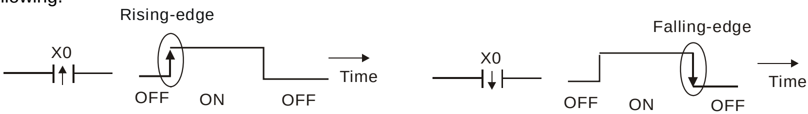
	ORB	
5	LD	Y1
	AND	X4
6	LD	T0
	AND	M3
	ORB	
7	ANB	
8	OUT	Y1
	TMR	T0 K10

The detail explanation of basic structure of ladder diagram

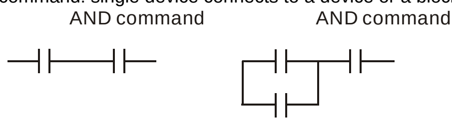
1. LD (LDI) command: give the command LD or LDI in the start of a block.



The structures of command LDP and LDF are similar to the command LD. The difference is that command LDP and LDF will act in the rising-edge or falling-edge when contact is ON as shown in the following.

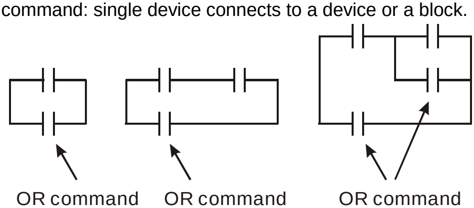


2. AND (ANI) command: single device connects to a device or a block in series.



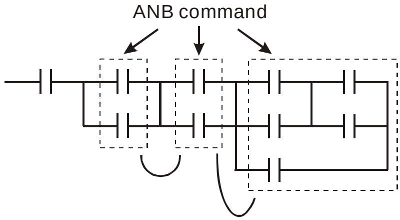
The structures of ANDP and ANDF are the same but the action is in rising-edge or falling-edge.

3. OR (ORI) command: single device connects to a device or a block.

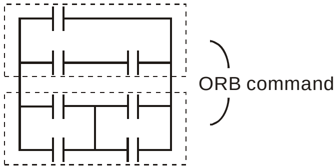


The structures of ORP and ORF are the same but the action is in rising-edge or falling-edge.

4. ANB command: a block connects to a device or a block in series.



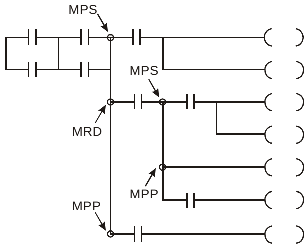
5. ORB command: a block connects to a device or a block in parallel.



If there are several blocks when operate ANB or ORB, they should be combined to blocks or network from up to down or from left to right.

6. MPS, MRD, MPP commands: Divergent memory of multi-output. It can produce many various outputs.
7. The command MPS is the start of divergent point. The divergent point means the connection place between horizontal line and vertical line. We should determine to have contact memory command or not according to the contacts status in the same vertical line. Basically, each contact could have memory command but in some places of ladder diagram conversion will be omitted due to the PLC operation convenience and capacity limit. MPS command can be used for 8 continuous times and you can recognize this command by the symbol "┬".
8. MRD command is used to read memory of divergent point. Because the logical status is the same in the same horizontal line, it needs to read the status of original contact to keep on analyzing other ladder diagram. You can recognize the command MRD by the symbol "├".
9. MPP command is used to read the start status of the top level and pop it out from stack. Because it is the last item of the horizontal line, it means the status of this horizontal line is ending.

You can recognize this command by the symbol "└". Basically, that is all right to use the above method to analyze but sometimes compiler will omit the same outputs as shown at the right.



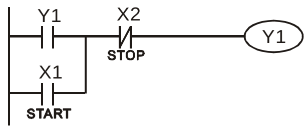
C.3.4 The Example for Designing Basic Program

■ Start, Stop and Latching

In the same occasions, it needs transient close button and transient open button to be start and stop switch. Therefore, if you want to keep the action, you should design latching circuit. There are several latching circuits in the following:

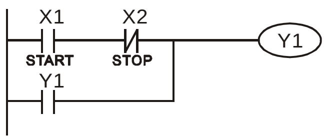
Example 1: the latching circuit for priority of stop

When start normally open contact X1=On, stop normally contact X2 **=** Off, and Y1=On are set at the same time, if X2=On, the coil Y1 will stop acting. Therefore, it calls priority of stop.



Example 2: the latching circuit for priority of start

When start normally open contact X1=On, stop normally contact X2 **=** Off and Y1=On (coil Y1 will be active and latching) are valid at the same time, if X2=On, coil Y1 will be active due to latched contact. Therefore, it calls priority of start.



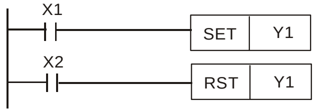
Example 3: the latching circuit of SET and RST commands

The figure at the right side is latching circuit that made up of RST and SET command.

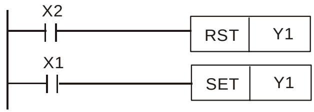
It is top priority of stop when RST command is set behind SET command. When executing PLC from up to down, The coil Y1 is ON and coil Y1 will be OFF when X1 and X2 act at the same time, therefore it calls priority of stop.

It is top priority of start when SET command is set after RST command. When X1 and X2 act at the same time, Y1 is ON so it calls top priority of start.

Top priority of stop

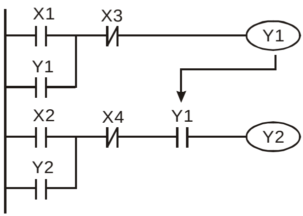


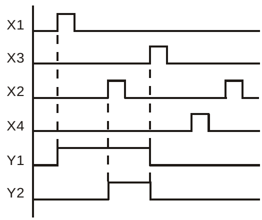
Top priority of start



- The common control circuit

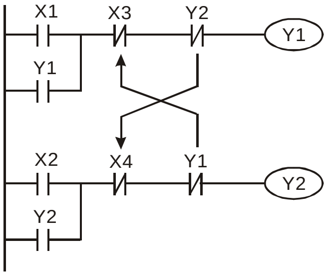
Example 4: condition control

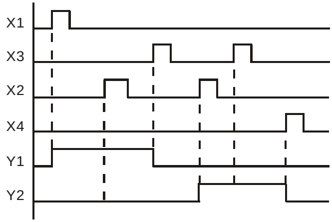




X1 and X3 can start/stop Y1 separately, X2 and X4 can start/stop Y2 separately and they are all self latched circuit. Y1 is an element for Y2 to do AND function due to the normally open contact connects to Y2 in series. Therefore, Y1 is the input of Y2 and Y2 is also the input of Y1.

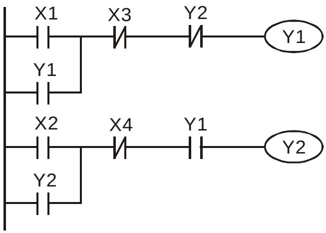
Example 5: Interlock control





The figure above is the circuit of interlock control. Y1 and Y2 will act according to the start contact X1 and X2. Y1 and Y2 will act not at the same time, once one of them acts and the other won't act. (This is called interlock.) Even if X1 and X2 are valid at the same time, Y1 and Y2 won't act at the same time due to up-to-down scan of ladder diagram. For this ladder diagram, Y1 has higher priority than Y2.

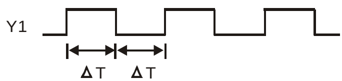
Example 6: Sequential Control



If add normally close contact Y2 into Y1 circuit to be an input for Y1 to do AND function. (as shown in the left side) Y1 is an input of Y2 and Y2 can stop Y1 after acting. In this way, Y1 and Y2 can execute in sequential.

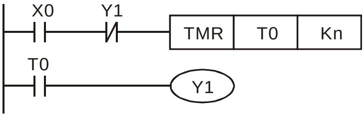
Example 7: Oscillating Circuit

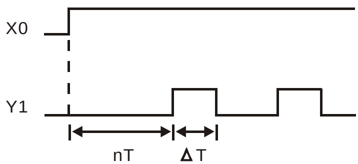
The period of oscillating circuit is ΔT+ΔT



The figure above is a very simple ladder step diagram. When starting to scan Y1 normally close contact, Y1 normally close contact is close due to the coil Y1 is OFF. Then it will scan Y1 and the coil Y1 will be ON and output 1. In the next scan period to scan normally close contact Y1, Y1 normally close contact will be open due to Y1 is ON. Finally, coil Y1 will be OFF. The result of repeated scan, coil Y will output the vibrating pulse with cycle timeΔT(On)+ΔT(Off).

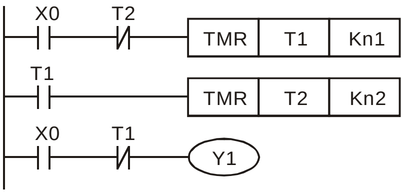
The vibrating circuitry of cycle time ΔT(On)+ΔT(Off):

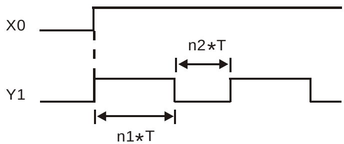




The figure above uses timer T0 to control coil Y1 to be ON. After Y1 is ON, timer T0 will be closed at the next scan period and output Y1. The oscillating circuit will be shown as above. (n is the setting of timer and it is decimal number. T is the base of timer. (clock period))

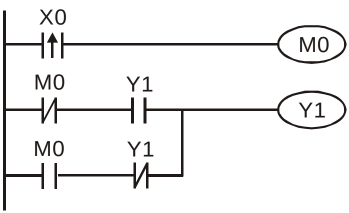
Example 8: Blinking Circuit

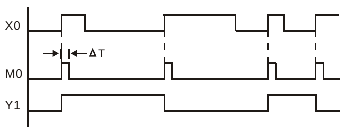




The figure above is common used oscillating circuit for indication light blinks or buzzer alarms. It uses two timers to control On/OFF time of Y1 coil. If figure, n1 and n2 are timer setting of T1 and T2. T is the base of timer (clock period)

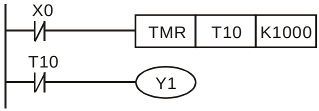
Example 9: Triggered Circuit



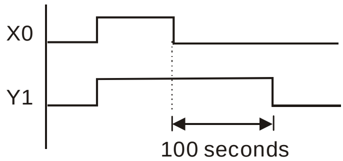


In figure above, the rising-edge differential command of X0 will make coil M0 to have a single pulse of ΔT (a scan time). Y1 will be ON during this scan time. In the next scan time, coil M0 will be OFF, normally close M0 and normally close Y1 are all closed. However, coil Y1 will keep on being ON and it will make coil Y1 to be OFF once a rising-edge comes after input X0 and coil M0 is ON for a scan time. The timing chart is as shown above. This circuit usually executes alternate two actions with an input. From above timing: when input X0 is a square wave of a period T, output coil Y1 is square wave of a period 2T.

Example 10: Delay Circuit

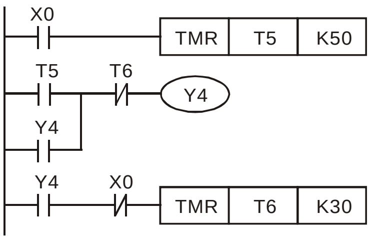


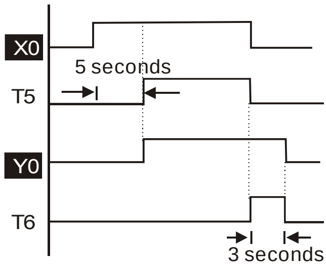
TB = 0.1 sec



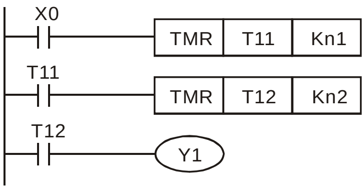
When input X0 is ON, output coil Y1 will be ON at the same time due to the corresponding normally close contact OFF makes timer T10 to be OFF. Output coil Y1 will be OFF after delaying 100 seconds (K1000*0.1 seconds =100 seconds) once input X0 is OFF and T10 is ON. Please refer to timing chart above.

Example 11: Output delay circuit, in the following example, the circuit is made up of two timers. No matter input X0 is ON or OFF, output Y4 will be delay.

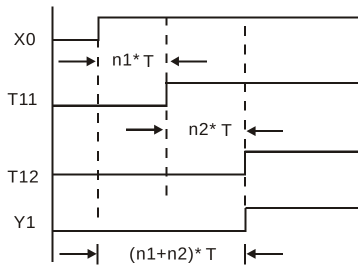




Example12: Extend Timer Circuit



In this circuit, the total delay time from input X0 is close and output Y1 is ON= (n1+n2)* T. where T is clock period.



C.4 PLC Devices

C.4.1 Summary of ADV50-PLC Device Number

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Items</th><th colspan="2">Specifications</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Control Method</td><td colspan="2">Stored program, cyclic scan system</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">I/O Processing Method</td><td colspan="2">Batch processing (when END instruction is executed)</td><td>I/O refresh instruction is available</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Execution Speed</td><td colspan="2">Basic commands (minimum 0.24 us)</td><td>Application commands (10 ~ hundreds us)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Program Language</td><td colspan="2">Instruction, Ladder Logic, SFC</td><td>Including the Step commands</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Program Capacity</td><td colspan="2">350 STEPS</td><td>SRAM + Battery</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Commands</td><td colspan="2">45 commands</td><td>28 basic commands
17 application commands</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Input/Output Contact</td><td colspan="2">Input (X): 6, output (Y): 2</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">Relay bit mode</td><td>X</td><td colspan="3">External Input Relay</td><td>X0~X17, 16 points, octal number system</td><td rowspan="2">Total is 32 points</td><td>Correspond to external input point</td></tr>
<tr><td>Y</td><td colspan="3">External Output Relay</td><td>Y0~Y17, 16 points, octal number system</td><td>Correspond to external output point</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">M</td><td rowspan="2">Auxiliary</td><td colspan="2">For general</td><td>M0~M159, 160 points</td><td rowspan="2">Total is 192 points</td><td rowspan="2">Contacts can switch to On/Off in program</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">For special</td><td>M1000~M1031, 32 points</td></tr>
<tr><td>T</td><td>Timer</td><td colspan="2">100ms timer</td><td>T0~T15, 16 points</td><td>Total is 16 points</td><td>When the timer indicated by TMR command attains the setting, the T contact with the same number will be On.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">C</td><td rowspan="4">Counter</td><td colspan="2">16-bit count up for general</td><td>C0~C7, 8 points</td><td>Total is 8 points</td><td rowspan="4">When the counter indicated by CNT command attains the setting, the C contact with the same number will be On.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">32-bit count up/down high-speed counter</td><td>1-phase input</td><td rowspan="3">C235, 1 point (need to use with PG card)</td><td rowspan="3">Total is 1 point</td></tr>
<tr><td>1-phase 2 inputs</td></tr>
<tr><td>2-phase 2 inputs</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Items</th><th colspan="2">Specifications</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Register WORD data</td><td>T</td><td colspan="2">Present value of timer</td><td colspan="2">T0~T15, 16 points</td><td>When timer attains, the contact of timer will be On.</td></tr>
<tr><td>C</td><td colspan="2">Present value of counter</td><td colspan="2">C0~C7, 8-bit counter, 8 points</td><td>When timer attains, the contact of timer will be On.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">D</td><td rowspan="2">Data register</td><td>For general</td><td>D0~D29, 30 points</td><td rowspan="2">Total is 75 points</td><td rowspan="2">It can be memory area for storing data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>For special</td><td>D1000~D1044, 45 points</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Constant</td><td>K</td><td colspan="2">Decimal</td><td colspan="3">K-32,768 ~ K32,767 (16-bit operation)</td></tr>
<tr><td>H</td><td colspan="2">Hexadecimal</td><td colspan="3">H0000 ~ HFFFF (16-bit operation)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Communication port (for read/write program)</td><td colspan="3">RS485 (slave)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Analog input/output</td><td colspan="3">Built-in 2 analog inputs and 1 analog output</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Function extension module (optional)</td><td colspan="3">Digital input/output card (A/D, D/A card)</td></tr>
</table>

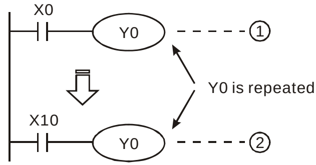
C.4.2 Devices Functions

■ The Function of Input/output Contacts

The function of input contact X: input contact X reads input signal and enter PLC by connecting with input equipment. It is unlimited usage times for A contact or B contact of each input contact X in program. The On/Off of input contact X can be changed with the On/Off of input equipment but can't be changed by using peripheral equipment (Soft PLC-ADV50).

■ The Function of Output Contact Y

The mission of output contact Y is to drive the load that connects to output contact Y by sending On/Off signal. There are two kinds of output contact: one is relay and the other is transistor. It is unlimited usage times for A or B contact of each output contact Y in program. But there is number for output coil Y and it is recommended to use one time in program. Otherwise, the output result will be decided by the circuit of last output Y with PLC program scan method.



The output of Y0 will be decided by circuit ○,2, i.e. decided by On/Off of X10.

C.4.3 Value, Constant [K] / [H]

Constant	K	Decimal	K-32,768 ~ K32,767 (16-bit operation)
	H	Hexadecimal	H0000 ~ HFFFF (16-bit operation)

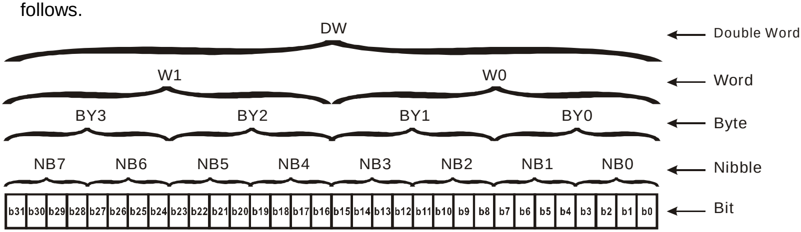
There are five value types for ADV50-PLC to use by the different control destination. The following is the explanation of value types.

1. **Binary Number (BIN)**

It uses binary system for the PLC internal operation or storage. The relative information of binary system is in the following.

Bit	:	Bit is the basic unit of binary system, the status are 1 or 0.
Nibble	:	It is made up of continuous 4 bits, such as b3~b0. It can be used to represent number 0~9 of decimal or 0~F of hexadecimal.
Byte	:	It is made up of continuous 2 nibbles, i.e. 8 bits, b7~b0. It can used to represent 00~FF of hexadecimal system.
Word	:	It is made up of continuous 2 bytes, i.e. 16 bits, b15~b0. It can used to represent 0000~FFFF of hexadecimal system.
Double Word	:	It is made up of continuous 2 words, i.e. 32 bits, b31~b0. It can used to represent 00000000~FFFFFFFF of hexadecimal system.

The relations among bit, nibble, byte, word, and double word of binary number are shown as follows.



2. **Octal Number (OCT)**

The numbers of external input and output terminal of ADV50-PLC use octal number.
Example:
External input: X0~X7, X10~X17…(device number)
External output: Y0~Y7, Y10~Y17…(device number).

3. **Decimal Number (DEC)**

The suitable time for decimal number to use in ADV50-PLC system.

- To be the setting value of timer T or counter C, such as TMR C0 K50. (K constant)
- To be the device number of M, T, C and D. For example: M10, T30. (device number)
- To be operand in application command, such as MOV K123 D0. (K constant)

4. **BCD (Binary Code Decimal, BCD)**

It shows a decimal number by a unit number or four bits so continuous 16 bits can use to represent the four numbers of decimal number. BCD code is usually used to read the input value of DIP switch or output value to 7-segment display to be display.

5. **Hexadecimal Number (HEX)**

The suitable time for hexadecimal number to use in ADV50-PLC system.

- To be operand in application command. For example: MOV H1A2B D0. (constant H)

Constant K:
In PLC, it is usually have K before constant to mean decimal number. For example, K100 means 100 in decimal number.

> Exception:
>
> The value that is made up of K and bit equipment X, Y, M, S will be bit, byte, word or double word. For example, K2Y10, K4M100. K1 means a 4-bit data and K2~K4 can be 8, 12 and 16-bit data separately.

Constant H:
In PLC, it is usually have H before constant to mean hexadecimal number. For example, H100 means 100 in hexadecimal number.

C.4.4 The Function of Auxiliary Relay

There are output coil and A, B contacts in auxiliary relay M and output relay Y. It is unlimited usage times in program. User can control loop by using auxiliary relay, but can’t drive external load directly. There are two types divided by its characteristics.

1. Auxiliary relay for general : It will reset to Off when power loss during running. Its state will be Off when power on after power loss.
2. Auxiliary relay for special : Each special auxiliary relay has its special function. Please don’t use undefined auxiliary relay.

C.4.5 The Function of Timer

The unit of timer is 1ms, 10ms and 100ms. The count method is count up. The output coil will be On when the present value of timer equals to the settings. The setting is K in decimal number. Data register D can be also used as settings.

The real setting time of timer = unit of timer * settings

C.4.6 The Features and Functions of Counter

Features:

Item	16 bits counters	32 bits counters	
Type	General	General	High speed
Count direction	Count up	Count up/down	
Settings	0~32,767	-2,147,483,648~+2,147,483,647	
Designate for constant	Constant K or data register D	Constant K or data register D (2 for designated)	
Present value change	Counter will stop when attaining settings	Counter will keep on counting when attaining settings	
Output contact	When count attains settings, contact will be On and latched.	When count up attains settings, contact will be On and latched. When count down attains settings, contact will reset to Off.	
Reset action	The present value will reset to 0 when RST command is executed and contact will reset to Off.		
Present register	16 bits	32 bits	
Contact action	After scanning, act together.	After scanning, act together.	Act immediately when count attains. It has no relation with scan period.

Functions:

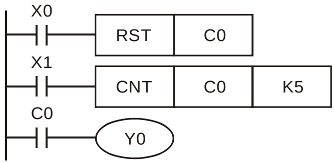
When pulse input signal of counter is from Off to On, the present value of counter equals to settings and output coil is On. Settings are decimal system and data register D can also be used as settings.

16-bit counters C0~C7:

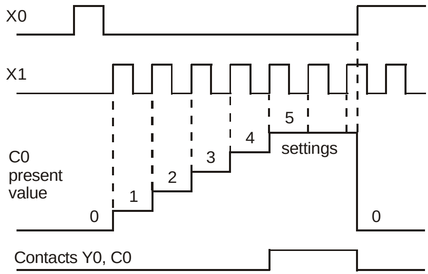
1. Setting range of 16-bit counter is K0~K32,767. (K0 is the same as K1. output contact will be On immediately at the first count.
2. General counter will be clear when PLC is power loss. If counter is latched, it will remember the value before power loss and keep on counting when power on after power loss.
3. If using MOV command, Soft PLC-ADV50 to send a value, which is large than setting to C0, register, at the next time that X1 is from Off to On, C0 counter contact will be On and present value will be set to the same as settings.
4. The setting of counter can use constant K or register D (not includes special data register D1000~D1044) to be indirect setting.
5. If using constant K to be setting, it can only be positive number but if setting is data register D, it can be positive/negative number. The next number that counter counts up from 32,767 is -32,768.

Example:

```
LD     X0
RST    C0
LD     X1
CNT    C0  K5
LD     C0
OUT    Y0
```



1. When X0=On, RST command is executed, C0 reset to 0 and output contact reset to Off.
2. When X1 is from Off to On, counter will count up (add 1).
3. When counter C0 attains settings K5, C0 contact is On and C0 = setting =K5. C0 won't accept X1 trigger signal and C0 remains K5.



32-bit high-speed addition/subtraction counter C235:

1. Setting range of 32-bit high-speed addition/subtraction counter is : K-2,147,483,648~K2,147,483,647.
2. The settings can be positive / negative numbers by using constant K or data register D (special data register D1000~D1044 is not included). If using data register D, the setting will occupy two continuous data register.

The total band width of high-speed counter that ADV50 supports is up to 30kHz and 500kHz for pulse input.

C.4.7 Register Types

There are two types of register which sorts by characters in the following:

1. General register : The data in register will be cleared to 0 when PLC switches from RUN to STOP or power is off.
2. Special register : Each special register has the special definition and purpose. It is used to save system status, error messages, monitor state.

C.4.8 Special Auxiliary Relays

Special M	Function	Read(R)/ Write(W)
M1000	Normally open contact (a contact). This contact is On when running and it is On when the status is set to RUN.	R
M1001	Normally closed contact (b contact). This contact is Off in running and it is Off when the status is set to RUN.	R
M1002	On only for 1 scan after RUN. Initial pulse is contact a. It will get positive pulse in the RUN moment. Pulse width=scan period.	R
M1003	Off only for 1 scan after RUN. Initial pulse is contact a. It will get negative pulse in the RUN moment. Pulse width=scan period.	R
M1004	Reserved	--
M1005	Fault indication of the AC motor drives	R
M1006	Output frequency is 0	R
M1007	The operation direction of AC motor drives (FWD: 0, REV: 1)	R
M1008	Reserved	--
M1009	Reserved	--
M1010	Reserved	--
M1011	10ms clock pulse, 5ms On/5ms Off	R
M1012	100ms clock pulse, 50ms On / 50ms Off	R
M1013	1s clock pulse, 0.5s On / 0.5s Off	R
M1014	1min clock pulse, 30s On / 30s Off	R
M1015	Frequency attained	R
M1016	Parameter read/write error	R
M1017	Succeed to write parameter	R
M1018	Enable high-speed counter function (When M1028=On)	R
M1019	Reserved	R
M1020	Zero flag	R
M1021	Borrow flag	R
M1022	Carry flag	R
M1023	Divisor is 0	R
M1024	Reserved	--
M1025	RUN(ON) / STOP(OFF) the AC motor drive	R/W

Special M	Function	Read(R)/ Write(W)
M1026	The operation direction of the AC motor drive (FWD: OFF, REV: ON)	R/W
M1027	Reserved	--
M1028	Enable(ON)/disable(OFF) high-speed counter function	R/W
M1029	Clear the value of high-speed counter	R/W
M1030	Decide to count up(OFF)/count down(ON)	R/W
M1031	Reserved	--

C.4.9 Special Registers

Special D	Function	Read(R)/ Write(W)
D1000	Reserved	--
D1001	PLC firmware version	R
D1002	Program capacity	R
D1003	Checksum	R
D1004-D1009	Reserved	--
D1010	Present scan time (Unit: 0.1ms)	R
D1011	Minimum scan time (Unit: 0.1ms)	R
D1012	Maximum scan time (Unit: 0.1ms)	R
D1013-D1019	Reserved	--
D1020	Output frequency	R
D1021	Output current	R
D1022	The ID of the extension card: 02 USB Card 03 12-Bit A/D (2CH) 12-Bit D/A (2CH) 04 Relay Card-2C 05 Relay Card-3A 06 3IN/3OUT Card	R

Special D	Function	Read(R)/ Write(W)
	07 PG Card	
D1023-D1024	Reserved	--
D1025	The present value of the high-speed counter C235 (low byte)	R
D1026	The present value of the high-speed counter C235 (high byte)	R
D1027	Frequency command of the PID control	R
D1028	The value of AVI (analog voltage input) 0-10V corresponds to 0-1023	R
D1029	The value of ACI (analog current input) 4-20mA corresponds to 0-1023 or the value of AVI2 (analog voltage input) 0-10V corresponds to 0-1023	R
D1030	The value of V.R digital keypad 0-10V corresponds to 0-1023	R
D1031-D1035	Reserved	--
D1036	PLC error code	R
D1037-D1039	Reserved	--
D1040	Analog output value	R/W
D1041-D1042	Reserved	--
D1043	User defined (when Pr.00.04 is set to 2, the register data will be displayed as C xxx)	R/W
D1044	High-speed counter mode	R/W

C.4.10 Communication Addresses for Devices (only for PLC2 mode)

Device	Range	Type	Address (Hex)
X	00–17 (octal)	Bit	0400-040F
Y	00–17 (octal)	Bit	0500-050F
T	00-15	Bit/word	0600-060F
M	000-159	Bit	0800-089F
M	1000-1031	Bit	0BE8-0C07
C	0-7	Bit/word	0E00-0E07

Device	Range	Type	Address (Hex)
D	00-63	Word	1000-101D
D	1000-1044	Word	13E8-1414

NOTE: when it is in PLC1 mode, the communication address will correspond to the parameter NOT the device. For example, address 0400H will correspond to Pr.04.00 NOT X0.

C.4.11 Function Code (only for PLC2 mode)

Function Code	Description	Supported Devices
01	Read coil status	Y, M, T, C
02	Read input status	X, Y, M, T, C
03	Read one data	T, C, D
05	Force changing one coil status	Y, M, T, C
06	Write in one data	T, C, D
0F	Force changing multiple coil status	Y, M, T, C
10	Write in multiple data	T, C, D

C.5 Commands

C.5.1 Basic Commands

Commands	Function	Operands
LD	Load contact A	X, Y, M, T, C
LDI	Load contact B	X, Y, M, T, C
AND	Series connection with A contact	X, Y, M, T, C
ANI	Series connection with B contact	X, Y, M, T, C
OR	Parallel connection with A contact	X, Y, M, T, C
ORI	Parallel connection with B contact	X, Y, M, T, C
ANB	Series connects the circuit block	--
ORB	Parallel connects the circuit block	--
MPS	Save the operation result	--
MRD	Read the operation result (the pointer not moving)	--
MPP	Read the result	--
INV	Inverter the result	--

C.5.2 Output Commands

Commands	Function	Operands
OUT	Drive coil	Y, M
SET	Action latched (ON)	Y, M
RST	Clear the contacts or the registers	Y, M, T, C, D

C.5.3 Timer and Counters

Commands	Function	Operands
TMR	16-bit timer	T-K or T-D
CNT	16-bit counter	C-K or C-D

C.5.4 Main Control Commands

Commands	Function	Operands
MC	Connect the common series connection contacts	N0~N7
MCR	Disconnect the common series connection contacts	N0~N7

C.5.5 Rising-edge/falling-edge Detection Commands of Contact

Commands	Function	Operands
LDP	Rising-edge detection operation starts	X, Y, M, T, C
LDF	Falling-edge detection operation starts	X, Y, M, T, C
ANDP	Rising-edge detection series connection	X, Y, M, T, C
ANDF	Falling-edge detection series connection	X, Y, M, T, C
ORP	Rising-edge detection parallel connection	X, Y, M, T, C
ORF	Falling-edge detection parallel connection	X, Y, M, T, C

C.5.6 Rising-edge/falling-edge Output Commands

Commands	Function	Operands
PLS	Rising-edge output	Y, M
PLF	Falling-edge output	Y, M

C.5.7 End Command

Command	Function	Operands
END	Program end	none

C.5.8 Explanation for the Commands

Mnemonic	**Function**					
LD	Load A contact					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
The LD command is used on the A contact that has its start from the left BUS or the A contact that is the start of a contact circuit. Function of the command is to save present contents, and at the same time, save the acquired contact status into the accumulative register.
Program Example:

Ladder diagram	Command code		Operation
	**LD**	**X0**	Load contact A of X0
	AND	X1	Connect to contact A of X1 in series
	OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	**Function**					
LDI	Load B contact					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
The LDI command is used on the B contact that has its start from the left BUS or the B contact that is the start of a contact circuit. Function of the command is to save present contents, and at the same time, save the acquired contact status into the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

Command code:		Operation:
LDI	**X0**	Load contact B of X0
AND	X1	Connect to contact A of X1 in series
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	Function					
AND	Series connection- A contact					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
The AND command is used in the series connection of A contact. The function of the command is to readout the status of present specific series connection contacts first, and then to perform the “AND” calculation with the logic calculation result before the contacts, thereafter, saving the result into the accumulative register.
Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

Command code:		Operation:
LDI	X1	Load contact B of X1
AND	**X0**	Connect to contact A of X0 in series
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	**Function**					
ANI	Series connection- B contact					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:

The ANI command is used in the series connection of B contact. The function of the command is to readout the status of present specific series connection contacts first, and then to perform the “AND” calculation with the logic calculation result before the contacts, thereafter, saving the result into the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

Command code:		Operation:
LD	X1	Load contact A of X1
ANI	**X0**	Connect to contact B of X0 in series
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

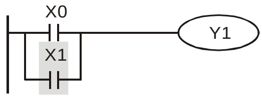
Mnemonic	**Function**					
OR	Parallel connection- A contact					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:

The OR command is used in the parallel connection of A contact. The function of the command is to readout the status of present specific series connection contacts, and then to perform the “OR” calculation with the logic calculation result before the contacts, thereafter, saving the result into the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0
OR	**X1**	Connect to contact A of X1 in parallel
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

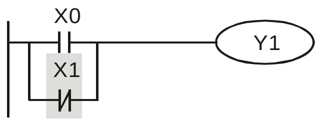
Mnemonic	Function					
ORI	Parallel connection- B contact					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:

The ORI command is used in the parallel connection of B contact. The function of the command is to readout the status of present specific series connection contacts, and then to perform the “OR” calculation with the logic calculation result before the contacts, thereafter, saving the result into the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X1	Load contact A of X0
ORI	**X1**	Connect to contact B of X1 in parallel
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

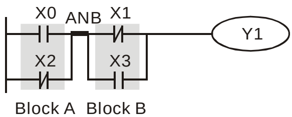
Mnemonic	Function
ANB	Series connection (Multiple Circuits)
Operand	None

Explanations:

To perform the “ANB” calculation between the previous reserved logic results and contents of the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0
ORI	X2	Connect to contact B of X2 in parallel
LDI	X1	Load contact B of X1
OR	X3	Connect to contact A of X3 in parallel
ANB		Connect circuit block in series
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

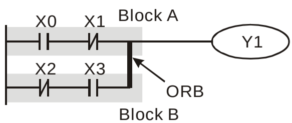
Mnemonic	**Function**
ORB	Parallel connection (Multiple circuits)
Operand	None

Explanations:

To perform the "OR" calculation between the previous reserved logic results and contents of the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0
ANI	X1	Connect to contact B of X1 in series
LDI	X2	Load contact B of X2
AND	X3	Connect to contact A of X3 in series
ORB		Connect circuit block in parallel
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	**Function**
MPS	Store the current result of the internal PLC operations
Operand	None

Explanations:
To save contents of the accumulative register into the operation result. (the result operation pointer pluses 1)

Mnemonic	**Function**
MRD	Reads the current result of the internal PLC operations
Operand	None

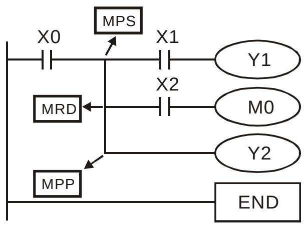
Explanations:
Reading content of the operation result to the accumulative register. (the pointer of operation result doesn't move)

Mnemonic	**Function**
MPP	Reads the current result of the internal PLC operations
Operand	None

Explanations:
Reading content of the operation result to the accumulative register. (the stack pointer will decrease 1)

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



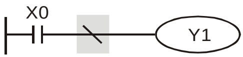
Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0
MPS		Save in stack
AND	X1	Connect to contact A of X1 in series
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil
MRD		Read from the stack (without moving pointer)
AND	X2	Connect to contact A of X2 in series
OUT	M0	Drive M0 coil
MPP		Read from the stack
OUT	Y2	Drive Y2 coil
END		End program

Mnemonic	**Function**
INV	Inverting Operation
Operand	None

Explanations:
Inverting the operation result and use the new data as an operation result.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load A contact of X0
INV		Inverting the operation result
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	**Function**					
OUT	Output coil					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	--	✓	✓	--	--	--

Explanations:
Output the logic calculation result before the OUT command to specific device.

Motion of coil contact

Operation result	**OUT command**		
	Coil	**Contact**	
		A contact (normally open)	**B contact (normally closed)**
FALSE	OFF	Non-continuity	Continuity
TRUE	ON	Continuity	Non-continuity

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

Command code:		Operation:
LDI	X0	Load contact B of X0
AND	X1	Connect to contact A of X1 in series
OUT	**Y1**	Drive Y1 coil

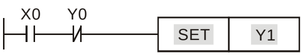
Mnemonic	Function					
SET	Latch (ON)					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	--	✓	✓	--	--	--

Explanations:

When the SET command is driven, its specific device is set to be “ON,” which will keep “ON” whether the SET command is still driven. You can use the RST command to set the device to “OFF”.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0
ANI	Y0	Connect to contact B of Y0 in series
SET	**Y1**	Y1 latch (ON)

Mnemonic	Function					
RST	Clear the contacts or the registers					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	--	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:

When the RST command is driven, motion of its specific device is as follows:

Device	Status
Y, M	Coil and contact will be set to "OFF".
T, C	Present values of the timer or counter will be set to 0, and the coil and contact will be set to "OFF."
D	The content value will be set to 0.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0
RST	**Y5**	Clear contact Y5

Mnemonic	Function	
TMR	16-bit timer	
Operand	T-K	T0~T15, K0~K32,767
	T-D	T0~T15, D0~D29

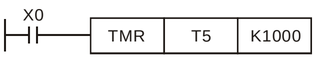
Explanations:

When TMR command is executed, the specific coil of timer is ON and timer will start to count. When the setting value of timer is attained (counting value >= setting value), the contact will be as following:

NO(Normally Open) contact	Open collector
NC(Normally Closed) contact	Close collector

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0 T5 timer
TMR	**T5 K1000**	Setting is K1000

Mnemonic	Function	
CNT	16-bit counter	
Operand	C-K	C0~C7, K0~K32,767
	C-D	C0~C7, D0~D29

Explanations:

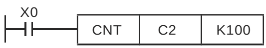
1. When the CNT command is executed from OFF→ON, which means that the counter coil is driven, and 1 should thus be added to the counter's value; when the counter achieved specific set value (value of counter = the setting value), motion of the contact is as follows:

NO(Normally Open) contact	Continuity
NC(Normally Closed) contact	Non-continuity

2. If there is counting pulse input after counting is attained, the contacts and the counting values will be unchanged. To re-count or to conduct the CLEAR motion, please use the RST command.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	X0	Load contact A of X0 C2 counter
CNT	**C2 K100**	Setting is K100

Mnemonic	Function
MC / MCR	Master control Start/Reset
Operand	N0~N7

Explanations:

1. MC is the main-control start command. When the MC command is executed, the execution of commands between MC and MCR will not be interrupted. When MC command is OFF, the motion of the commands that between MC and MCR is described as follows:

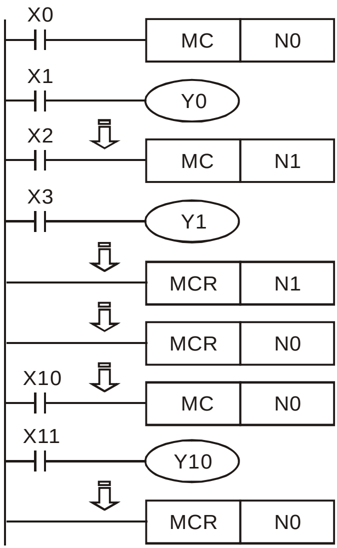
Timer	The counting value is set back to zero, the coil and the contact are both turned OFF
Accumulative timer	The coil is OFF, and the timer value and the contact stay at their present condition
Subroutine timer	The counting value is back to zero. Both coil and contact are turned OFF.
Counter	The coil is OFF, and the counting value and the contact stay at their present condition

Coils driven up by the OUT command	All turned OFF
Devices driven up by the SET and RST commands	Stay at present condition
Application commands	All of them are not acted , but the nest loop FOR-NEXT command will still be executed for times defined by users even though the MC-MCR commands is OFF.

2. MCR is the main-control ending command that is placed at the end of the main-control program and there should not be any contact commands prior to the MCR command.
3. Commands of the MC-MCR main-control program supports the nest program structure, with 8 layers as its greatest. Please use the commands in order from N0~ N7, and refer to the following

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	**X0**	Load A contact of X0
MC	**N0**	Enable N0 common series connection contact
LD	X1	Load A contact of X1
OUT	Y0	Drive Y0 coil
:		
LD	X2	Load A contact of X2
MC	**N1**	Enable N1 common series connection contact
LD	X3	Load A contact of X3
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil
:		
MCR	**N1**	Disable N1 common series connection contact
:		
MCR	**N0**	Disable N0 common series connection contact
:		
LD	X10	Load A contact of X10
MC	**N0**	Enable N0 common series connection contact

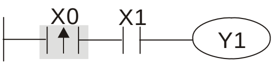
LD	X11	Load A contact of X11
OUT	Y10	Drive Y10 coil
:		
MCR	**N0**	Disable N0 common series connection contact

Mnemonic	**Function**					
LDP	Rising-edge detection operation					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
Usage of the LDP command is the same as the LD command, but the motion is different. It is used to reserve present contents and at the same time, saving the detection status of the acquired contact rising-edge into the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LDP	**X0**	Start X0 rising-edge detection
AND	X1	Series connection A contact of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	**Function**					
LDF	Falling-edge detection operation					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
Usage of the LDF command is the same as the LD command, but the motion is different. It is used to reserve present contents and at the same time, saving the detection status of the acquired contact falling-edge into the accumulative register.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

Command code:		Operation:
LDF	**X0**	Start X0 falling-edge detection
AND	X1	Series connection A contact of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	Function					
ANDP	Rising-edge series connection					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
ANDP command is used in the series connection of the contacts' rising-edge detection.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

Command code:		Operation:
LD	**X0**	Load A contact of X0
ANDP	**X1**	X1 rising-edge detection in series connection
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	Function					
ANDF	Falling-edge series connection					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
ANDF command is used in the series connection of the contacts' falling-edge detection.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:

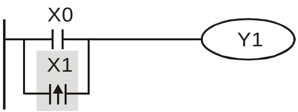
Command code:		Operation:
LD	**X0**	Load A contact of X0
ANDF	**X1**	X1 falling-edge detection in series connection
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	Function					
ORP	Rising-edge parallel connection					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
The ORP commands are used in the parallel connection of the contact's rising-edge detection.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



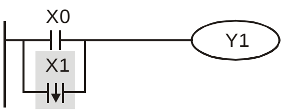
Command code:		Operation:
LD	**X0**	Load A contact of X0
ORP	**X1**	X1 rising-edge detection in parallel connection
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	Function					
ORF	Falling-edge parallel connection					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	--

Explanations:
The ORP commands are used in the parallel connection of the contact's falling-edge detection.

Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



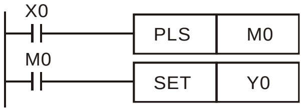
Command code:		Operation:
LD	**X0**	Load A contact of X0
ORF	**X1**	X1 falling-edge detection in parallel connection
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Mnemonic	Function					
PLS	Rising-edge output					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	--	✓	✓	--	--	--

Explanations:
When X0=OFF→ON (rising-edge trigger), PLS command will be executed and M0 will send the pulse of one time which the length is a scan time.

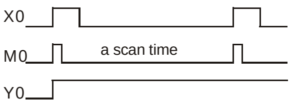
Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	**X0**	Load A contact of X0
PLS	**M0**	M0 rising-edge output
LD	M0	Load the contact A of M0
SET	Y0	Y0 latched (ON)

Timing Diagram:

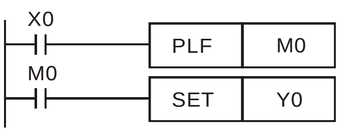


Mnemonic	**Function**					
PLF	Falling-edge output					
Operand	X0~X17	Y0~Y17	M0~M159	T0~15	C0~C7	D0~D29
	--	✓	✓	--	--	--

Explanations:
When X0= ON→OFF (falling-edge trigger), PLF command will be executed and M0 will send the pulse of one time which the length is the time for scan one time.

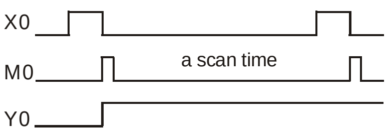
Program Example:

Ladder diagram:



Command code:		Operation:
LD	**X0**	Load A contact of X0
PLF	**M0**	M0 falling-edge output
LD	M0	Load the contact A of M0
SET	Y0	Y0 latched (ON)

Timing Diagram:



Mnemonic	Function
END	Program End
Operand	None

Explanations:
It needs to add the END command at the end of ladder diagram program or command program. PLC will scan from address o to END command, after executing it will return to address 0 to scan again.

C.5.9 Description of the Application Commands

	API	Mnemonic Codes		P Command	Function	Steps	
		16 bits	32 bits			16-bit	32-bit
Transmission Comparison	10	CMP	--	✓	Compare	7	--
	11	ZCP	--	✓	Zone compare	9	--
	12	MOV	--	✓	Data Move	5	--
	15	BMOV	--	✓	Block move	7	--
Four Fundamental Operations of Arithmetic	20	ADD	--	✓	Perform the addition of BIN data	7	--
	21	SUB	--	✓	Perform the subtraction of BIN data	7	--
	22	MUL	--	✓	Perform the multiplication of BIN data	7	--
	23	DIV	--	✓	Perform the division of BIN data	7	--
	24	INC	--	✓	Perform the addition of 1	3	--
	25	DEC	--	✓	Perform the subtraction of 1	3	--
Rotation and Displacement	30	ROR	--	✓	Rotate to the right	5	--
	31	ROL	--	✓	Rotate to the left	5	--
Special command for AC motor drive	53	--	DHSCS	X	High speed counter enable	--	13
	139	FPID	--	✓	Control PID parameters of inverter	5	--

	API	Mnemonic Codes		P Command	Function	Steps	
		16 bits	32 bits			16-bit	32-bit
	140	FREQ	--	✓	Control frequency of inverter	5	--
	141	RPR	--	✓	Read the parameter	9	--
	142	WPR	--	✓	Write the parameter	7	--

C.5.10 Explanation for the Application Commands

API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
10		CMP	P	S_1, S_2, D	Compare

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	CMP, CMPP: 7 steps
S_1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
S_2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
D		*	*									

Operands:
S1: Comparison Value 1 S2: Comparison Value 2 D: Comparison result

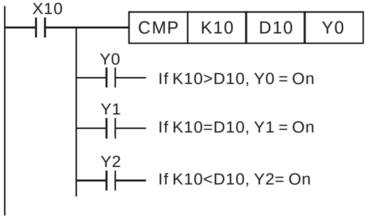
Explanations:

1. Operand D occupies 3 consecutive devices.
2. See the specifications of each model for their range of use.
3. The contents in S1 and S2 are compared and the result will be stored in D.
4. The two comparison values are compared algebraically and the two values are signed binary values. When b15 = 1 in 16-bit instruction, the comparison will regard the value as negative binary values.

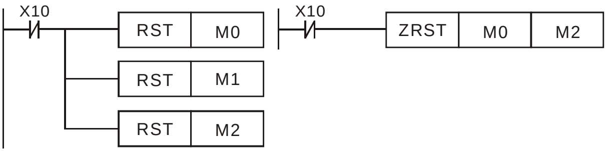
Program Example:

1. Designate device Y0, and operand D automatically occupies Y0, Y1, and Y2.
2. When X10 = On, CMP instruction will be executed and one of Y0, Y1, and Y2 will be On. When X10 = Off, CMP instruction will not be executed and Y0, Y1, and Y2 remain their status before X10 = Off.
3. If the user need to obtain a comparison result with ≥ ≤, and ≠, make a series parallel

connection between Y0 ~ Y2.



4. To clear the comparison result, use RST or ZRST instruction.



API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
11		ZCP	P	S_1, S_2, S, D	Zone Compare

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	ZCP, ZCPP: 9 steps
S_1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
S_2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
S				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
D		*	*									

Operands:
S1: Lower bound of zone comparison   S2: Upper bound of zone comparison S: Comparison value
D: Comparison result

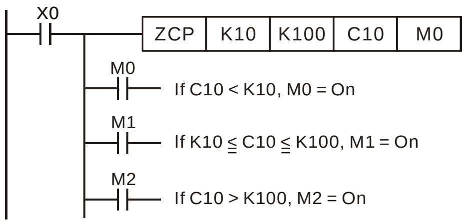
Explanations:

1. The content in S1 should be smaller than the content in S2.
2. Operand D occupies 3 consecutive devices.
3. See the specifications of each model for their range of use.
4. S is compared with its S1 S2 and the result is stored in D.
5. When S1 > S2, the instruction performs comparison by using S1 as the lower/upper bound.

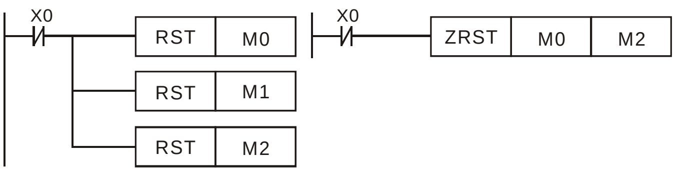
6. The two comparison values are compared algebraically and the two values are signed binary values. When b15 = 1 in 16-bit instruction or b31 = 1 in 32-bit instruction, the comparison will regard the value as negative binary values.

Program Example:

1. Designate device M0, and operand D automatically occupies M0, M1 and M2.
2. When X0 = On, ZCP instruction will be executed and one of M0, M1, and M2 will be On. When X10 = Off, ZCP instruction will not be executed and M0, M1, and M2 remain their status before X0 = Off.



3. To clear the comparison result, use RST or ZRST instruction.



API		Mnemonic		Operands	Function
12		MOV	P	S, D	Move

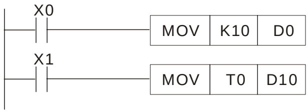
Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	MOV, MOVP: 5 steps
S				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
D							*	*	*	*	*	

Operands:
S: Source of data   D: Destination of data
Explanations:

1. See the specifications of each model for their range of use.
2. When this instruction is executed, the content of S will be moved directly to D. When this instruction is not executed, the content of D remains unchanged.

Program Example:
MOV instruction has to be adopted in the moving of 16-bit data.

1. When X0 = Off, the content in D10 will remain unchanged. If X0 = On, the value K10 will be moved to D10 data register.
2. When X1 = Off, the content in D10 will remain unchanged. If X1 = On, the present value T0 will be moved to D10 data register.



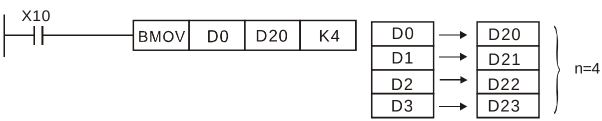
API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
15		BMOV	P	S, D, n	Block Move

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	BMOV, BMOVP: 7 steps
S						*	*	*	*	*	*	
D							*	*	*	*	*	
n				*	*				*	*	*	

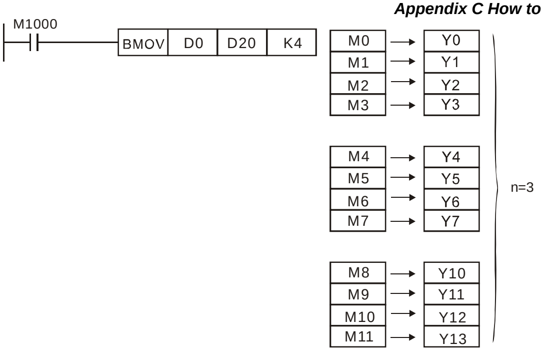
Operands:
S: Start of source devices D: Start of destination devices n: Number of data to be moved
Explanations:

1. Range of **n**: 1 ~ 512
2. See the specifications of each model for their range of use.
3. The contents in n registers starting from the device designated by S will be moved to n registers starting from the device designated by D. If n exceeds the actual number of available source devices, only the devices that fall within the valid range will be used.

Program Example 1:
When X10 = On, the contents in registers D0 ~ D3 will be moved to the 4 registers D20 ~ D23.



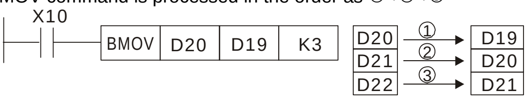
Program Example 2:
Assume the bit devices KnX, KnY, KnM and KnS are designated for moving, the number of digits of S and D has to be the same, i.e. their n has to be the same.



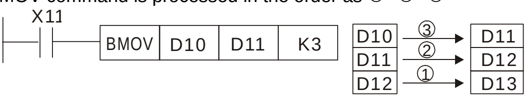
Program Example 3:

To avoid coincidence of the device numbers to be moved designated by the two operands and cause confusion, please be aware of the arrangement on the designated device numbers.

When S > D, the BMOV command is processed in the order as ①→②→③



When S < D, the BMOV command is processed in the order as ③→②→①



API	Mnemonic		Operands	Function
20	ADD	**P**	S_1, S_2, D	Addition

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	ADD, ADDP: 7 steps
S_1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
S_2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
D							*	*	*	*	*	

Operands:

S1: Summand   S2: Addend   D: Sum

Explanations:

1. See the specifications of each model for their range of use.
2. This instruction adds S1 and S2 in BIN format and store the result in D.
3. The highest bit is symbolic bit 0 (+) and 1 (-), which is suitable for algebraic addition, e.g. 3 + (-9) = -6.
4. Flag changes in binary addition

   16-bit command:

   A. If the operation result **=** 0, zero flag M1020 = On.

   B. If the operation result **<** -32,768, borrow flag M1021 = On.

   C. If the operation result **>** 32,767, carry flag M1022 = On.

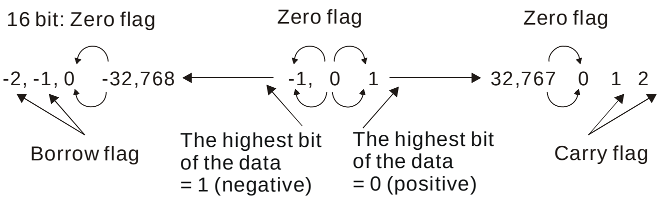
Program Example 1:

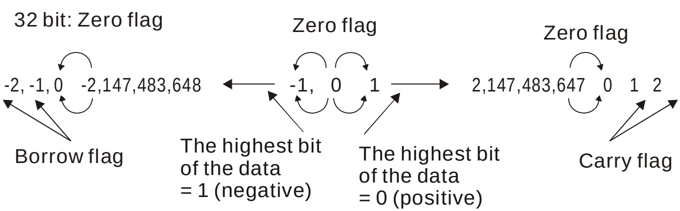
16-bit command:

When X0 = On, the content in D0 will plus the content in D10 and the sum will be stored in D20.

Remarks:

Flags and the positive/negative sign of the values:





API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
21		SUB	**P**	S_1, S_2, D	Subtraction

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	SUB, SUBP: 7 steps DSUB, DSUBP: 13 steps
S_1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
S_2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
D							*	*	*	*	*	

Operands:
S1: Minuend   S2: Subtrahend   D: Remainder
Explanations:

1. This instruction subtracts S1 and S2 in BIN format and stores the result in D.
2. The highest bit is symbolic bit 0 (+) and 1 (-), which is suitable for algebraic subtraction.
3. Flag changes in binary subtraction

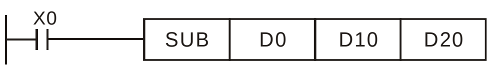
   In 16-bit instruction:

   A. If the operation result **=** 0, zero flag M1020 = On.

   B. If the operation result **<** -32,768, borrow flag M1021 = On.

   C. If the operation result **>** 32,767, carry flag M1022 = On.

Program Example:
In 16-bit BIN subtraction:
When X0 = On, the content in D0 will minus the content in D10 and the remainder will be stored in D20.



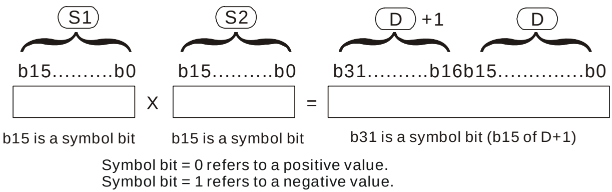
API		Mnemonic		Operands	Function
22		MUL	P	S_1, S_2, D	Multiplication

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	MUL, DMULP: 7 steps
S_1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
S_2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
D							*	*	*	*	*	

Operands:
S1: Multiplicand   S2: Multiplicator   D: Product
Explanations:

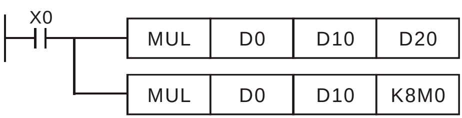
1. In 16-bit instruction, D occupies 2 consecutive devices.
2. This instruction multiplies S1 by S2 in BIN format and stores the result in D. Be careful with the positive/negative signs of S1, S2 and D when doing 16-bit and 32-bit operations.

   16-bit command:



When D serves as a bit device, it can designate K1 ~ K4 and construct a 16-bit result, occupying consecutive 2 groups of 16-bit data.

Program Example:
The 16-bit D0 is multiplied by the 16-bit D10 and brings forth a 32-bit product. The higher 16 bits are stored in D21 and the lower 16-bit are stored in D20. On/Off of the most left bit indicates the positive/negative status of the result value.

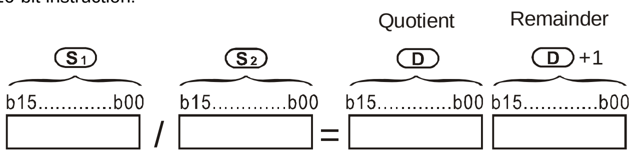


API		Mnemonic		Operands	Function
23		DIV	P	S_1, S_2, D	Division

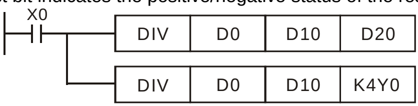
Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	DIV, DIVP: 7 steps
S_1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
S_2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	
D							*	*	*	*	*	

Operands:
S_1: Dividend **S_2**: Divisor **D**: Quotient and remainder
Explanations:

1. In 16-bit instruction, **D** occupies 2 consecutive devices.
2. This instruction divides **S_1** and **S_2** in BIN format and stores the result in **D**. Be careful with the positive/negative signs of **S_1**, **S_2** and **D** when doing 16-bit and 32-bit operations.
   16-bit instruction:



Program Example:
When X0 = On, D0 will be divided by D10 and the quotient will be stored in D20 and remainder in D21. On/Off of the highest bit indicates the positive/negative status of the result value.



API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
24		INC	P	D	Increment

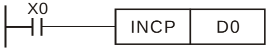
Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	INC, INCP: 3 steps
D							*	*	*	*	*	

Operands:
D: Destination device
Explanations:

1. If the instruction is not a pulse execution one, the content in the designated device D will plus “1” in every scan period whenever the instruction is executed.

2. This instruction adopts pulse execution instructions (INCP).
3. In 16-bit operation, 32,767 pluses 1 and obtains -32,768. In 32-bit operation, 2,147,483,647 pluses 1 and obtains -2,147,483,648.

Program Example:
When X0 goes from Off to On, the content in D0 pluses 1 automatically.



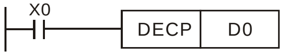
API	Mnemonic		Operands	Function
25	DEC	P	D	Decrement

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	DEC, DECP: 3 steps
D							*	*	*	*	*	

Operands:
D: Destination
Explanations:

1. If the instruction is not a pulse execution one, the content in the designated device D will minus “1” in every scan period whenever the instruction is executed.
2. This instruction adopts pulse execution instructions (DECP).
3. In 16-bit operation, -32,768 minuses 1 and obtains 32,767. In 32-bit operation, -2,147,483,648 minuses 1 and obtains 2,147,483,647.

Program Example:
When X0 goes from Off to On, the content in D0 minuses 1 automatically.



API	Mnemonic		Operands	Function
30	ROR	P	D, n	Rotate to the Right

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	ROR, RORP: 5 steps
D							*	*	*	*	*	
n				*	*							

Operands:

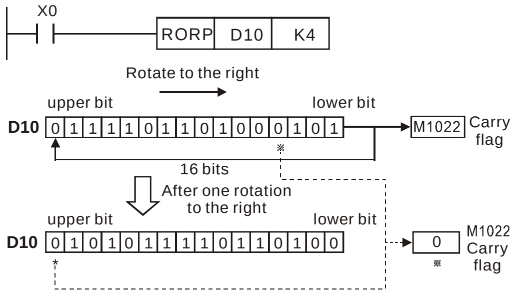
D: Device to be rotated **n**: Number of bits to be rotated in 1 rotation

Explanations:

1. This instruction rotates the device content designated by **D** to the right for **n** bits.
2. This instruction adopts pulse execution instructions (RORP).

Program Example:

When X0 goes from Off to On, the 16 bits (4 bits as a group) in D10 will rotate to the right, as shown in the figure below. The bit marked with ※ will be sent to carry flag M1022.



API	Mnemonic		Operands	Function
31	ROL	P	D, n	Rotate to the Left

Type / OP	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	Program Steps
D							*	*	*	*	*	ROL, ROLP: 5 steps
n				*	*							

Operands:

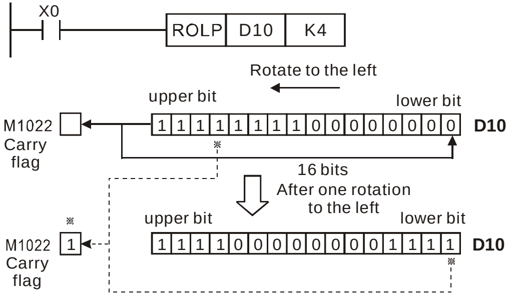
D: Device to be rotated **n**: Number of bits to be rotated in 1 rotation

Explanations:

1. This instruction rotates the device content designated by **D** to the left for **n** bits.
2. This instruction adopts pulse execution instructions (ROLP).

Program Example:

When X0 goes from Off to On, the 16 bits (4 bits as a group) in D10 will rotate to the left, as shown in the figure below. The bit marked with ※ will be sent to carry flag M1022.


X0
ROLP
D10
K4
Rotate to the left
upper bit
lower bit
M1022
Carry flag
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
D10
16 bits
After one rotation to the left
upper bit
lower bit
M1022
Carry flag
1
1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1
D10

C.5.11 Special Application Commands for the AC Motor Drive

API		Mnemonic			Operands	Function
53			DHSCS		S1, S2, D	Compare (for high-speed counter)

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	DHSCS: 13 steps
S1				*	*						*	
S2										*		
D		*	*						*	*	*	

Operands:
S1: Comparison Value S2: High-speed counter C235 D: Comparison result

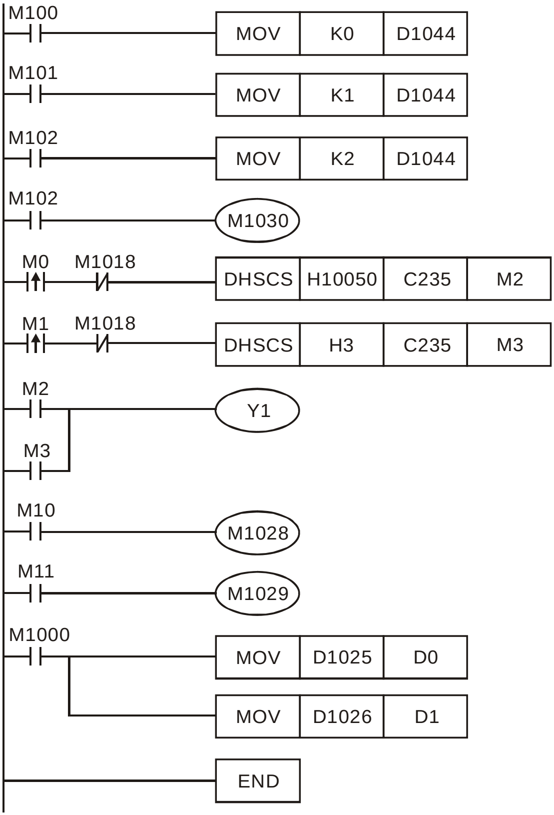
Explanations:

1. It needs optional PG card to receive external input pulse.
2. To count automatically, please set the target value by using DHSCS command and set M1028=On. The counter C235 will be ON when the count number = target value. If you want to clear C235, please set M1029=ON.
3. Please use rising-edge/falling-edge command, such as LDP/LDF, for the contact condition. Please notice that error may occur when using contact A/B for the contact condition.
4. There are three input modes for high-speed counter in the following can be set by D1044.
   - *A-B phase mode(D1044=0): user can input the A and B pulse for counting. Make sure that* $\overline{A}$, $\overline{B}$ *and GND are grounding.*
   - *Pulse + signal mode(D1044=1): user can count by pulse input or signal. A is for pulse and B is for signal. Make sure that* $\overline{A}$, $\overline{B}$ *and GND are grounding.*
   - *Pulse + flag mode(D1044=2): user can count by M1030. Only A is needed for this mode and make sure that* $\overline{A}$, *and GND are grounding.*

Program Example:

1. Assume that when M100=ON, it is set to A-B phase mode. When M101=ON, it is set to pulse+signal mode. When M102=ON, it is set to pulse+flag mode.
2. M1030 is used to set to count up (OFF) and count down (ON).
3. If M0 goes from OFF to ON, DHSCS command starts to execute the comparison of high-speed counter. When C235 goes from H'2 to H'3 or from H'4 to H'3, M3 will be always be ON.

4. If M1 goes from OFF to ON, DHSCS command starts to execute the comparison of high-speed counter. When C235 goes from H’1004F to H’10050 or from H’10051 to H’10050, M2 will be always be ON.
5. M1028: it is used to enable(ON)/disable(OFF) the high-speed counter function. M1029: it is used to clear the high-speed counter. M1018: it is used to start high-speed counter function. (when M1028 is ON).
6. D1025: the low word of high-speed counter C235. D1026: the high word of high-speed counter C235.



API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
139		RPR	P	S1, S2	Read the AC motor drive’s parameters

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	RPR, RPRP: 5 steps
S1				*	*						*	
S2											*	

Operands:
S1: Data address for reading S2: Register that saves the read data

API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
140		WPR	P	S1, S2	Write the AC motor drive's parameters

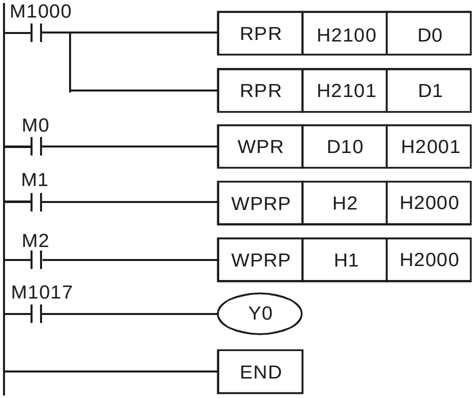
Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	WPR, WPRP: 5 steps
S1				*	*						*	
S2				*	*						*	

Operands:

S1: Data address for writing S2: Register that saves the written data

Program Example:

1. Assume that it will write the data in address H2100 of the ADV50 into D0 and H2101 into D1.
2. When M0=ON, it will write the data in D10 to the address H2001 of the ADV50.
3. When M1=ON, it will write the data in H2 to the address H2000 of the ADV50, i.e. start the AC motor drive.
4. When M2=ON, it will write the data in H1 to the address H2000 of the ADV50, i.e. stop the AC motor drive.
5. When data is written successfully, M1017 will be ON.



API	Mnemonic			Operands	Function
141		FPID	P	S1, S2, S3, S4	PID control for the AC motor drive

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	FPID, FPIDP: 9 steps
S1				*	*						*	
S2				*	*						*	
S3				*	*						*	
S4				*	*						*	

Operands:

S1: PID Set Point Selection(0-4), S2: Proportional gain P (0-100), S3: Integral Time I (0-10000), S4: Derivative control D (0-100)

Explanation:

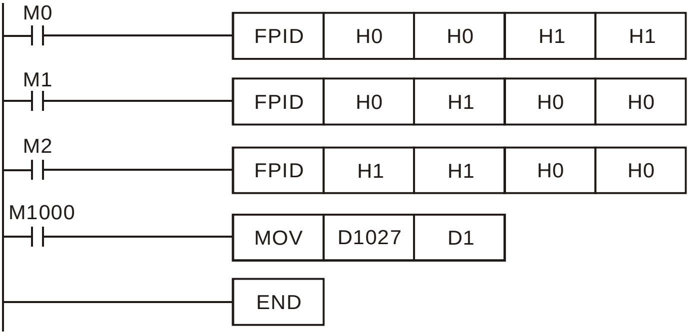
1. This command FPID can control the PID parameters of the AC motor drive directly, including Pr.10.00 PID set point selection, Pr.10.02 Proportional gain (P), Pr.10.03 Integral time (I) and Pr.10.04 Derivative control (D)

Program Example:

1. Assume that when M0=ON, S1 is set to 0 (PID function is disabled), S2=0, S3=1 (unit: 0.01 seconds) and S4=1 (unit: 0.01 seconds).
2. Assume that when M1=ON, S1 is set to 0 (PID function is disabled), S2=1 (unit: 0.01), S3=0 and S4=0.
3. Assume that when M2=ON, S1 is set to 1(frequency is inputted by digital keypad), S2=1

(unit: 0.01), S3=0 and S4=0.

4. D1027: frequency command controlled by PID.



API		Mnemonic		Operands	Function
142		FREQ	P	S1, S2, S3	Operation control of the AC motor drive

Type / OP	Bit Devices			Word devices								Program Steps
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	FREQ, FREQP: 7 steps
S1				*	*						*	
S2				*	*						*	
S3				*	*						*	

Operands:

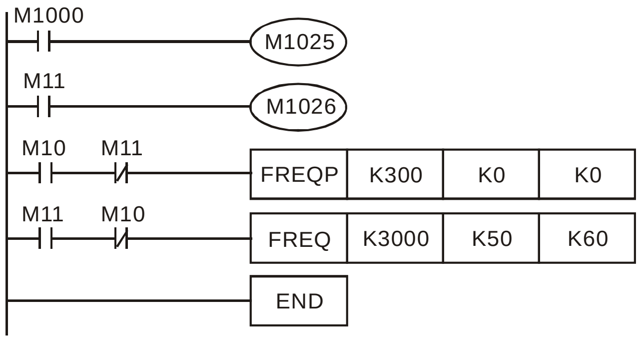
S1: frequency command, S2: acceleration time, S3: deceleration time

Explanation:

1. This command can control frequency command, acceleration time and deceleration time of the AC motor drive. Please use M1025 to RUN(ON)/STOP(OFF) the AC motor drive and use M1025 to control the operation direction: FWD(ON)/REV(OFF).

Program Example:

1. M1025: RUN(ON)/STOP(Off) the AC motor drive. M1026: operation direction of the AC motor drive – FWD(OFF)/REV(ON). M1015: frequency is reached.
2. When M10=ON, setting frequency command of the AC motor drive to K300(3.00Hz) and acceleration/deceleration time is 0.
3. When M11=ON, setting frequency command of the AC motor drive to K3000(30.00Hz), acceleration time is 50 and deceleration time is 60.


M1000
M1025
M11
M1026
M10
M11
FREQP
K300
K0
K0
M11
M10
FREQ
K3000
K50
K60
END

C.6 Error Code

Code	ID	Description	Corrective Actions
PLod	20	Data write error	Check if the program is error and download the program again
PLSv	21	Data write error when executing	Power on again and download the program again
PLdA	22	Program upload error	1. Please upload again. 2. Return to the factory if it occurs continuously
PLFn	23	Command error when download program	Check if the program is error and download program again
PLor	30	Program capacity exceeds memory capacity	Power on again and download program again
PLFF	31	Command error when executing	
PLSn	32	Check sum error	
PLEd	33	There is no “END” command in the program	
PLCr	34	The command MC is continuous used more than nine times	

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix D CANopen Function

The built-in CANopen function is a kind of remote control. Master can control the AC motor drive by using CANopen protocol. CANopen is a CAN-based higher layer protocol. It provides standardized communication objects, including real-time data (Process Data Objects, PDO), configuration data (Service Data Objects, SDO), and special functions (Time Stamp, Sync message, and Emergency message). And it also has network management data, including Boot-up message, NMT message, and Error Control message. Refer to CiA website http://www.can-cia.org/ for details.

Gefran CANopen supports functions:

- Support CAN2.0A Protocol;
- Support CANopen DS301 V4.02;
- Support DSP-402 V2.0.

Gefran CANopen supports services:

- PDO (Process Data Objects): PDO1~ PDO2
- SDO (Service Data Object):
  Initiate SDO Download;
  Initiate SDO Upload;
  Abort SDO;
  SDO message can be used to configure the slave node and access the Object Dictionary in every node.
- SOP (Special Object Protocol):
  Support default COB-ID in Predefined Master/Slave Connection Set in DS301 V4.02;
  Support SYNC service;
  Support Emergency service.
- NMT (Network Management):
  Support NMT module control;
  Support NMT Error control;
  Support Boot-up.

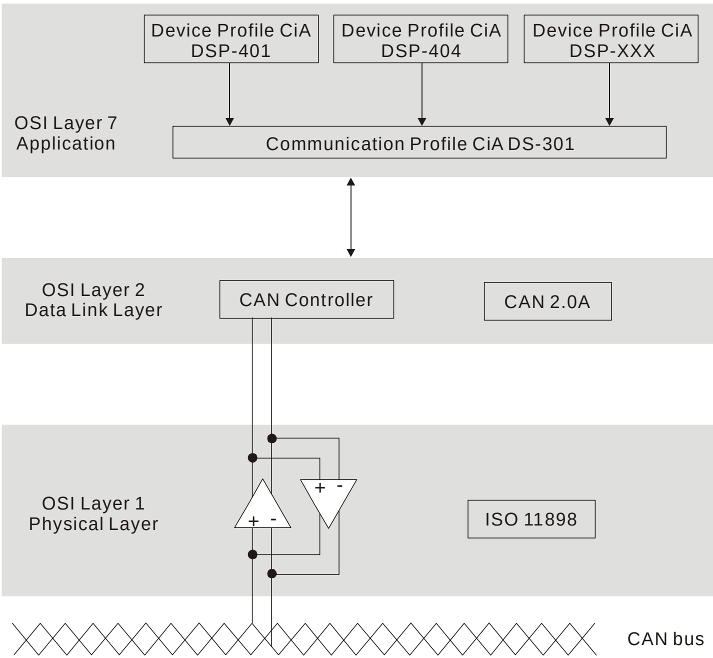
Gefran CANopen doesn't support service:

- Time Stamp service

D.1 Overview

D.1.1 CANopen Protocol

CANopen is a CAN-based higher layer protocol, and was designed for motion-oriented machine control networks, such as handling systems. Version 4 of CANopen (CiA DS301) is standardized as EN50325-4. The CANopen specifications cover application layer and communication profile (CiA DS301), as well as a framework for programmable devices (CiA 302), recommendations for cables and connectors (CiA 303-1) and SI units and prefix representations (CiA 303-2).



D.1.2 RJ-45 Pin Definition

8~1 socket

plug

PIN	Signal	Description
1	CAN_H	CAN_H bus line (dominant high)
2	CAN_L	CAN_L bus line (dominant low)
3	CAN_GND	Ground / 0V /V-
4	SG+	485 communication
5	SG-	485 communication
7	CAN_GND	Ground / 0V /V-

D.1.3 Pre-Defined Connection Set

To reduce configuration effort for simple networks, CANopen define a mandatory default identifier allocation scheme. The 11-bit identifier structure in predefined connection is set as follows:

COB Identifier (CAN Identifier)										
10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Function Code				Node Number						

Object	Function Code	Node Number	COB-ID	Object Dictionary Index
Broadcast messages				
NMT	0000	-	0	-
SYNC	0001	-	0x80	0x1005, 0x1006, 0x1007
TIME STAMP	0010	-	0x100	0x1012, 0x1013
Point-to-point messages				
Emergency	0001	1-127	0x81-0xFF	0x1014, 0x1015

Object	Function Code	Node Number	COB-ID	Object Dictionary Index
TPDO1	0011	1-127	0x181-0x1FF	0x1800
RPDO1	0100	1-127	0x201-0x27F	0x1400
TPDO2	0101	1-127	0x281-0x2FF	0x1801
RPDO2	0110	1-127	0x301-0x37F	0x1401
TPDO3	0111	1-127	0x381-0x3FF	0x1802
RPDO3	1000	1-127	0x401-0x47F	0x1402
TPDO4	1001	1-127	0x481-0x4FF	0x1803
RPDO4	1010	1-127	0x501-0x57F	0x1403
Default SDO (tx)	1011	1-127	0x581-0x5FF	0x1200
Default SDO (rx)	1100	1-127	0x601-0x67F	0x1200
NMT Error Control	1110	1-127	0x701-0x77F	0x1016, 0x1017

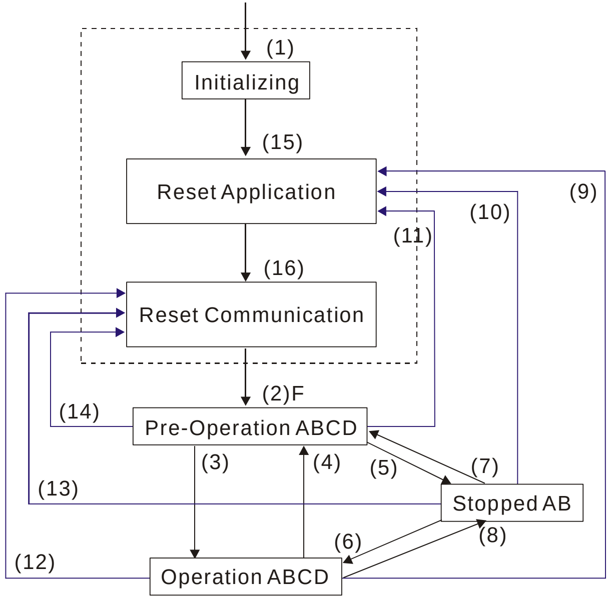
D.1.4 CANopen Communication Protocol

It has services as follows:

- NMT (Network Management Object)
- SDO (Service Data Object)
- PDO (Process Data Object)
- EMCY (Emergency Object)

D.1.4.1 NMT (Network Management Object)

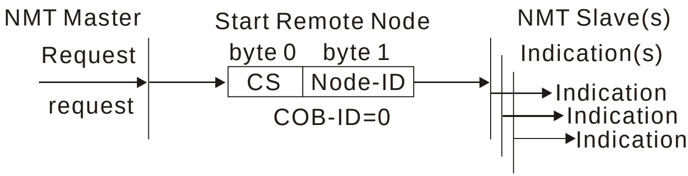
The Network Management (NMT) follows a Master/Slave structure for executing NMT service. Only one NMT master is in a network, and other nodes are regarded as slaves. All CANopen nodes have a present NMT state, and NMT master can control the state of the slave nodes. The state diagram of a node are shown as follows:



(1) After power is applied, it is auto in initialization state	A: NMT
(2) Enter pre-operational state automatically	B: Node Guard
(3) (6) Start remote node	C: SDO
(4) (7) Enter pre-operational state	D: Emergency
(5) (8) Stop remote node	E: PDO
(9) (10) (11) Reset node	F: Boot-up
(12) (13) (14) Reset communication	
(15) Enter reset application state automatically	
(16) Enter reset communication state automatically	

	Initializing	Pre-Operational	Operational	Stopped
PDO			○	
SDO		○	○	
SYNC		○	○	
Time Stamp		○	○	
EMERG		○	○	
Boot-up	○			
NMT		○	○	○

NMT Protocol is shown as follows:



Cs

Value	Definition
1	Start
2	Stop
128	Enter Pre-Operational
129	Reset Node
130	Reset Communication

D.1.4.2 SDO (Service Data Object)

SDO is used to access the Object Dictionary in every CANopen node by Client/Server model. One SDO has two COB-ID (request SDO and response SDO) to upload or download data between two nodes. No data limit for SDOs to transfer data. But it needs to transfer by segment when data exceeds 4 bytes with an end signal in the last segment.

The Object Dictionary (OD) is a group of objects in CANopen node. Every node has an OD in the system, and OD contains all parameters describing the device and its network behavior. The access path of OD is the index and sub-index, each object has a unique index in OD, and has sub-index if necessary.

The request and response frame structure of SDO communication is shown as follows:

Type		Data 0								Data 1	Data 2	Data 3	Data 4	Data 5	Data 6	Data 7
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Index	Index	Index	Data	Data	Data	Data
		command								L	H	Sub	LL	LH	HL	HH
Initiate Domain Download	Client	0	0	1	-	N		E	S							
	Server	0	1	1	-	-	-	-	-							
Initiate Domain Upload	Client	0	1	0	-	-	-	-	-							
	Server	0	1	0	-	N		E	S							
Abort Domain Transfer	Client	1	0	0	-	-	-	-	-							
	Server	1	0	0	-	-	-	-	-							

N: Bytes not use
E: normal(0)/expedited(1)
S: size indicated

D.1.4.3 PDO (Process Data Object)

PDO communication can be described by the producer/consumer model. Each node of the network will listen to the messages of the transmission node and distinguish if the message has to be processed or not after receiving the message. PDO can be transmitted from one device to one another device or to many other devices.

Every PDO has two PDO services: a TxPDO and a RxPDO. PDOs are transmitted in a non-confirmed mode.

PDO Transmission type is defined in the PDO communication parameter index (1400h for the 1st RxPDO or 1800h for the 1st TxPDO), and all transmission types are listed in the following table:

Type Number	PDO				
	Cyclic	Acyclic	Synchronous	Asynchronous	RTR only
0		○	○		
1-240	○		○		
241-251	Reserved				
252			○		○
253				○	○
254				○	
255				○	

Type number 1-240 indicates the number of SYNC message between two PDO transmissions.

Type number 252 indicates the data is updated (but not sent) immediately after receiving SYNC.

Type number 253 indicates the data is updated immediately after receiving RTR.

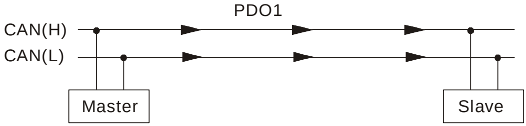
Type number 254: Gefran CANopen doesn't support this transmission format.

Type number 255 indicates the data is asynchronous transmission.

All PDO transmission data must be mapped to index via Object Dictionary.

Example:

Master transmits PDO data to Slave



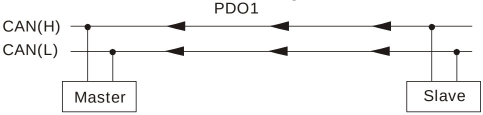
PDO1 data value: Data 0, Data 1, Data 2, Data 3, Data 4, Data 5, Data 6, Data 7,
0x11, 0x22, 0x33, 0x44, 0x55, 0x66, 0x77, 0x88,

PDO1 Map

Index	Sub	Definition	Value	R/W	Size
0x1600	0	0. Number	1	R/W	U8
0x1600	1	1. Mapped Object	0x60400010	R/W	U32
0x1600	2	2. Mapped Object	0	R/W	U32
0x1600	3	3. Mapped Object	0	R/W	U32
0x1600	4	4. Mapped Object	0	R/W	U32
0x6040	0	0. Control word	0x2211	R/W	U16 (2 Bytes)

0x60400010

Slave returns message to Master



PDO1 data value: Data 0, Data 1, Data 2, Data 3, Data 4, Data 5, Data 6, Data 7,
0xF3, 0x00,

PDO1 Map

Index	Sub	Definition	Value	R/W	Size
0x1A00	0	0. Number	1	R/W	U8
0x1A00	1	1. Mapped Object	0x60410010	R/W	U32
0x1A00	2	2. Mapped Object	0	R/W	U32
0x1A00	3	3. Mapped Object	0	R/W	U32
0x1A00	4	4. Mapped Object	0	R/W	U32
0x6041	0	Status Word	0xF3	R/W	U16

D.1.4.4 EMCY (Emergency Object)

Emergency objects are triggered when hardware failure occurs for a warning interrupt. The data format of a emergency object is a 8 bytes data as shown in the following:

Byte	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Content	Emergency Error Code		Error register (Object 1001H)	Manufacturer specific Error Field				

Definition of Emergency Object

Display	Controller Error Code	Description	CANopen Error Code	CANopen Error Register (bit 0~7)
oc	0001H	Over current	7400H	1
ou	0002H	Over voltage	7400H	2
oH1	0003H	Overheating	4310H	3
oL	0005H	Overload	2310H	1
oL1	0006H	Overload 1	7120H	1
oL2	0007H	Overload 2	2310H	1
EF	0008H	External Fault	9000H	7
ocA	0009H	Over-current during acceleration	2310H	1
ocd	000AH	Over-current during deceleration	2310H	1
ocn	000BH	Over-current during constant speed operation	2310H	1
GFF	000CH	Ground fault	2240H	1
Lu	000DH	Lower than standard voltage	3220h	2
PHL	000EH	Phase Loss	3130h	7
bb	000FH	External Base Block	9000h	7
codE	0011H	Software protection failure	6320h	7
cF1.0	0013H	Internal EEPROM can not be programmed	5530h	7
cF2.0	0014H	Internal EEPROM can not be read	5530h	7
HPF1	0015H	CC (current clamp)	5000h	7
HPF2	0016H	OV hardware error	5000h	2
HPF3	0017H	GFF hardware error	5000h	2
HPF4	0018H	OC hardware error	5000h	1
cF3.0	0019H	U-phase error	2300h	1
cF3.1	001AH	V-phase error	2300h	1
cF3.2	001BH	W-phase error	2300h	1
cF3.3	001CH	OV or LV	3210h	2
cF3.4	001DH	Temperature sensor error	4310h	3
cF1.1	001FH	Internal EEPROM can not be programmed	5530h	7

Display	Controller Error Code	Description	CANopen Error Code	CANopen Error Register (bit 0~7)
cF2.1	0020H	Internal EEPROM can not be read	5530h	7
AErr	0021H	Analog signal error	FF00h	7
PtC1	0023H	Motor overheat protection	7120h	3
PGEr	0024H	PG signal error	7300h	7
cP10	0029H	Communication time-out error on the control board or power board	7500h	4

Definition of Index

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory Setting	R/W	Size	Unit	NOTE
0x1000	0	Abort connection option code	0x00010192	RO	U32		
0x1001	0	Error register	0	RO	U8		
0x1005	0	COB-ID SYNC message	0x80	RW	U32		
0x1006	0	Communication cycle period	0	RW	U32	us	500us~15000us
0x1008	0	Manufacturer device name	0	RO	U32		
0x1009	0	Manufacturer hardware version	0	RO	U32		
0x100A	0	Manufacturer software version	0	RO	U32		
0x100C	0	Guarding time	0	RW	U16	ms	0x80 + node 1
0x100D	0	Guarding factor	0	RW	U8		
0x1014	0	COB-ID emergency	0x0000080 +Node-ID	RO	U32		
0x1015	0	Inhibit time EMCY	0	RW	U16	100us	It is set to be multiple of 10.
0x1016	0	Number	0x1	RO	U8		
	1	Consumer heartbeat time	0x0	RW	U32	1ms	Heartbeat time can be used when Guarding time is invalid.
0x1017	0	Producer heartbeat time	0x0	RW	U16	1ms	Heartbeat time can be used when Guarding time is invalid.
0x1018	0	Number	0x3	RO	U8		
	1	Vender ID	0x000001DD	RO	U32		
	2	Product code	0x00002600 +model	RO	U32		
	3	Revision	0x00010000	RO	U32		
0x1200	0	Server SDO Parameter	2	RO	U8		
	1	COB-ID Client -> Server	0x0000600+ Node-ID	RO	U32		

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory Setting	R/W	Size	Unit	NOTE
	2	COB-ID Client <- Server	0x0000580+ Node-ID	RO	U32		
0x1400	0	Number	2	RO	U8		
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x00000200 +Node-ID	RW	U32		
	2	Transmission Type	5	RW	U8		00:Acyclic & Synchronous 01~240:Cyclic & Synchronous 255: Asynchronous
0x1401	0	Number	2	RO	U8		
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x80000300 +Node-ID	RW	U32		
	2	Transmission Type	5	RW	U8		00:Acyclic & Synchronous 01~240:Cyclic & Synchronous 255: Asynchronous
0x1600	0	Number	2	RW	U8		
	1	1.Mapped Object	0x60400010	RW	U32		
	2	2.Mapped Object	0x60420020	RW	U32		
	3	3.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	4	4.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
0x1601	0	Number	0	RW	U8		
	1	1.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	2	2.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	3	3.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	4	4.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
0x1800	0	Number	5	RO	U8		
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x00000180 +Node-ID	RW	U32		
	2	Transmission Type	5	RW	U8		00:Acyclic & Synchrouous 01~240:Cyclic & Synchrouous 253: Remote function 255: Asynchronous
	3	Inhibit time	0	RW	U16	100us	It is set to be multiple of 10.
	4	Reserved	3	RW	U8		Reserved
	5	Event timer	0	RW	U16	1ms	
0x1801	0	Number	5	RO	U8		
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x80000280 +Node-ID	RW	U32		
	2	Transmission Type	5	RW	U8		00:Acyclic & Synchrouous 01~240:Cyclic & Synchrouous 253: Remote function

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory Setting	R/W	Size	Unit	NOTE
							255: Asynchronous
	3	Inhibit time	0	RW	U16	100us	It is set to be multiple of 10.
	4	Reserved	3	RW	U8		
	5	Event timer	0	RW	U16	1ms	
0x1A00	0	Number	2	RW	U8		
	1	1.Mapped Object	0x60410010	RW	U32		
	2	2.Mapped Object	0x60430010	RW	U32		
	3	3.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	4	4.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
0x1A01	0	Number	0	RW	U8		
	1	1.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	2	2.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	3	3.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		
	4	4.Mapped Object	0	RW	U32		

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory Setting	RW	Size	Unit	Map	NOTE
0x6007	0	Abort connection option code	2	RW	S16		Yes	0: No action 2: Disable Voltage 3: Quick stop
0x603F	0	Error code	0	RO	U16		Yes	
0x6040	0	Control word	0	RW	U16		Yes	bit 0 ~ 3: switch status bit 4: rfg enable bit 5: rfg unlock bit 6: rfg use ref bit 7: Fault reset
0x6041	0	Status word	0	RO	U16		Yes	Bit0 Ready to switch on Bit1 Switched on Bit2 Operation enabled Bit3 Fault Bit4 Voltage enabled Bit5 Quick stop Bit6 Switch on disabled Bit7 Warning Bit8 Bit9 Remote Bit10 Target reached Bit11 Internal limit active Bit12 - 13 Bit14 - 15
0x6042	0	vl target velocity	0	RW	S16	rpm	Yes	
0x6043	0	vl velocity demand	0	RO	S16	rpm	Yes	
0x604F	0	vl ramp function time	10000	RW	U32	1ms	Yes	If Pr.01.19 is set to 0.1, the unit must be 100ms and can’t be set to 0.
0x6050	0	vl slow down time	10000	RW	U32	1ms	Yes	If Pr.01.19 is set to 0.1, the unit must be 100ms and can’t be set to 0.
0x6051	0	vl quick stop time	1000	RW	U32	1ms	Yes	If Pr.01.19 is set to 0.1, the unit must be 100ms and

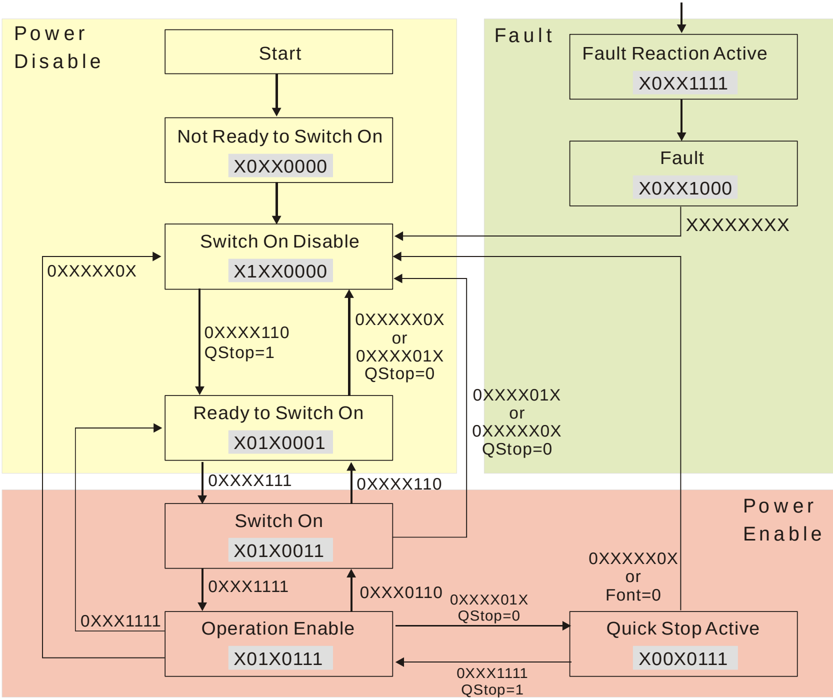
Index	Sub	Definition	Factory Setting	RW	Size	Unit	Map	NOTE
								can't be set to 0.
0x605A	0	Quick stop option code	2	RW	S16	1ms	Yes	0 : disable drive function 1 :slow down on slow down ramp 2: slow down on quick stop ramp (2th decel. time) 5 slow down on slow down ramp and stay in QUICK STOP 6 slow down on quick stop ramp and stay in QUICK STOP
0x6060	0	Mode of operation	2	RO	U8		Yes	Speed mode
0x6061	0	Mode of operation display	2	RO	U8		Yes	

D.2 How to Control by CANopen

To control the AC motor drive by CANopen, please set parameters by the following steps:
Step 1. Operation source setting: set Pr.02.01 to 5 (CANopen communication. Keypad STOP/RESET disabled.)
Step 2. Frequency source setting: set Pr.02.00 to 5 (CANopen communication)
Step 3. CANopen station setting: set Pr.09.13 (CANopen Communication Address 1-127)
Step 4. CANopen baud rate setting: set Pr.09.14 (CANBUS Baud Rate)
Step 5. Set multiple input function to quick stop when necessary: Set Pr.04.05 to 04.08 or Pr.11.06 to 11.11 to 23.

According to DSP-402 motion control rule, CANopen provides speed control mode. There are many status can be switched during Start to Quick Stop. To get current status, please read “Status Word”. Status is switched by the PDO index control word via external terminals.
Control word is a 16-byte in index 0x6040 and each bit has specific definition. The status bits are bit 4 to bit 6 as shown in the following:
Bit 4: ramp function enabled
Bit 5: ramp function disabled
Bit 6: rfg use reference

Following is the flow chart for status switch:



Gefran worldwide

GEFRAN BENELUX
Lammerdries, 14A
B-2250 OLEN
Ph. +32 (0) 14248181
Fax. +32 (0) 14248180
info@gefran.be

GEFRAN BRASIL ELETROELETRÔNICA
Avenida Dr. Altino Arantes,
377/379 Vila Clementino
04042-032 SÂO PAULO - SP
Ph. +55 (0) 1155851133
Fax +55 (0) 1155851425
gefran@gefran.com.br

GEFRAN DEUTSCHLAND
Philipp-Reis-Straße 9a
63500 SELIGENSTADT
Ph. +49 (0) 61828090
Fax +49 (0) 6182809222
vertrieb@gefran.de

GEFRAN SUISSE SA
Rue Fritz Courvoisier 40
2302 La Chaux-de-Fonds
Ph. +41 (0) 329684955
Fax +41 (0) 329683574
office@gefran.ch

GEFRAN - FRANCE
4, rue Jean Desparmet - BP 8237
69355 LYON Cedex 08
Ph. +33 (0) 478770300
Fax +33 (0) 478770320
commercial@gefran.fr

GEFRAN INC
Automation and Sensors
8 Lowell Avenue
WINCHESTER - MA 01890
Toll Free 1-888-888-4474
Ph. +1 (781) 7295249
Fax +1 (781) 7291468
info@gefranisi.com

GEFRAN INC
Motion Control
14201 D South Lakes Drive
NC 28273 - Charlotte
Ph. +1 704 3290200
Fax +1 704 3290217
salescontact@sieiamerica

SIEI AREG - GERMANY
Zachersweg, 17
D 74376 - Gemmrigheim
Ph. +49 7143 9730
Fax +49 7143 97397
info@sieiareg.de

GEFRAN SIEI - UK Ltd.
7 Pearson Road, Central Park
TELFORD, TF2 9TX
Ph. +44 (0) 845 2604555
Fax +44 (0) 845 2604556
sales@gefran.co.uk

GEFRAN SIEI - ASIA
Blk. 30 Loyang way
03-19 Loyang Industrial Estate
508769 SINGAPORE
Ph. +65 6 8418300
Fax. +65 6 7428300
info@gefransiei.com.sg

GEFRAN SIEI Electric
Block B, Gr.Flr, No.155,
Fu Te Xi Yi Road,
Wai Gao Qiao Trade Zone
200131 Shanghai
Ph. +86 21 5866 7816
Ph. +86 21 5866 1555
gefransh@online.sh.cn

SIEI DRIVES TECHNOLOGY
No.1265, B1, Hong De Road,
Jia Ding District
201821 Shanghai
Ph. +86 21 69169898
Fax +86 21 69169333
info@gefransiei.com.cn

GEFRAN

GEFRAN S.p.A.
Via Sebina 74
25050 Provaglio d'Iseo (BS)
ITALY
Ph. +39 030 98881
Fax +39 030 9839063
info@gefran.com
www.gefran.com

Drive & Motion Control Unit
Via Carducci 24
21040 Gerenzano [VA]
ITALY
Ph. +39 02 967601
Fax +39 02 9682653
infomotion@gefran.com

Technical Assistance :
technohelp@gefran.com

Customer Service :
motioncustomer@gefran.com
Ph. +39 02 96760500
Fax +39 02 96760278

Manuale ADV50 FP -EN
Rev. 0.1 - 9.6.2008
1S6D25